



Avaya IP Agent
Release 7.0
Installation and User Guide

Release 7.0
August 2007
Issue 1.1

© 2000 - 2007 Avaya Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Notice

While reasonable efforts were made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya Inc. can assume no liability for any errors. Changes and corrections to the information in this document might be incorporated in future releases.

Documentation disclaimer

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of this documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by Avaya. Customer and/or End User agree to indemnify and hold harmless Avaya, Avaya's agents, servants and employees against all claims, lawsuits, demands and judgments arising out of, or in connection with, subsequent modifications, additions or deletions to this documentation to the extent made by the Customer or End User.

Link disclaimer

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked Web sites referenced elsewhere within this documentation, and Avaya does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. We cannot guarantee that these links will work all the time and we have no control over the availability of the linked pages.

Warranty

Avaya Inc. provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language, as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the Avaya Support Web site:

<http://www.avaya.com/support>

License

USE OR INSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES THE END USER'S ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS SET FORTH HEREIN AND THE GENERAL LICENSE TERMS AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEB SITE

<http://support.avaya.com/LicenseInfo/> ("GENERAL LICENSE TERMS"). IF YOU DO NOT WISH TO BE BOUND BY THESE TERMS, YOU MUST RETURN THE PRODUCT(S) TO THE POINT OF PURCHASE WITHIN TEN (10) DAYS OF DELIVERY FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

Avaya grants End User a license within the scope of the license types described below. The applicable number of licenses and units of capacity for which the license is granted will be one (1), unless a different number of licenses or units of capacity is specified in the Documentation or other materials available to End User. "Designated Processor" means a single stand-alone computing device. "Server" means a Designated Processor that hosts a software application to be accessed by multiple users. "Software" means the computer programs in object code, originally licensed by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User, whether as stand-alone Products or pre-installed on Hardware. "Hardware" means the standard hardware Products, originally sold by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User.

License type(s)

Concurrent User License (CU). End User may install and use the Software on multiple Designated Processors or one or more Servers, so long as only the licensed number of Units are accessing and using the Software at any given time. A "Unit" means the unit on which Avaya, at its sole discretion, bases the pricing of its licenses and can be, without limitation, an agent, port or user, an e-mail or voice mail account in the name of a person or corporate function (e.g., webmaster or helpdesk), or a directory entry in the administrative database utilized by the Product that permits one user to interface with the Software. Units may be linked to a specific, identified Server.

Copyright

Except where expressly stated otherwise, the Product is protected by copyright and other laws respecting proprietary rights. Unauthorized reproduction, transfer, and or use can be a criminal, as well as a civil, offense under the applicable law.

Third-party components

Certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Product may contain software distributed under third party agreements ("Third Party Components"), which may contain terms that expand or limit rights to use certain portions of the Product ("Third Party Terms"). Information identifying Third Party Components and the Third Party Terms that apply to them is available on the Avaya Support Web site:

<http://support.avaya.com/ThirdPartyLicense/>

Preventing toll fraud

"Toll fraud" is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party (for example, a person who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf). Be aware that there can be a risk of toll fraud associated with your system and that, if toll

fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

Avaya fraud intervention

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support, call Technical Service Center Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at +1-800-643-2353 for the United States and Canada. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support Web site:

<http://www.avaya.com/support>

Trademarks

Avaya and the Avaya logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Avaya Inc. in the United States of America and/or other jurisdictions.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Downloading documents

For the most current versions of documentation, see the Avaya Support Web site:

<http://www.avaya.com/support>

COMPAS

This document is also available from the COMPAS database. The COMPAS ID for this document is 125770.

Avaya support

Avaya provides a telephone number for you to use to report problems or to ask questions about your product. The support telephone number is 1-800-242-2121 in the United States. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support Web site:

<http://www.avaya.com/support>

Contents

Preface	11
Purpose.	11
Audience	11
Reasons for reissue	11
Related documents	12
Chapter 1: Introduction	13
What is Avaya IP Agent?	13
New features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7	14
Avaya IP Agent features	15
Avaya IP Agent configurations	19
Road Warrior configuration (Voice-over-IP)	19
Telecommuter configuration	20
IP Telephone configuration	21
Callmaster VI configuration (DCP connection)	22
Avaya Telephone control by the server	22
Instant Messaging	24
Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent	24
Supported telephone types	24
Recommended telephone types	28
Network compatibility	28
Voice-over-IP considerations	28
Voice-over-IP performance considerations	30
System descriptions for Voice-over-IP	30
Chapter 2: Configuring the Avaya communication server	33
Required Avaya communication server circuit packs	34
C-LAN circuit pack.	34
IP Media Processor	35
Documentation.	35
Validating Feature Access Codes	35
Before you begin.	35
Steps for validating Feature Access Codes	36
Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations	37
Ensuring compatibility	37
Configuring station settings	40
Callmaster VI configurations	44
Ensuring compatibility	44
Configuring station settings	46

Contents

IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations	48
Ensuring compatibility	48
Configuring station settings	51
Avaya Telephone-DCP configurations	55
Ensuring compatibility	55
Configuring station settings	58
Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations	63
Prerequisites	63
Software download package contents	63
Avaya communication server.	64
SIP Enablement Services	64
Personal computer hardware	65
Personal computer software	67
Interactive installation.	67
Distributed installation information	68
Network-based installation information	68
Before you begin.	68
Installing Avaya IP Agent	69
Manually adding an Avaya Service Provider.	79
Silent installation	79
Before you begin.	79
Extracting the MSI installer image	80
Command-line parameters	81
Running a silent installation	83
Upgrades and reinstallation.	83
Upgrading Avaya IP Agent V3, R4, R5 or R6 to R7	83
Reinstalling Avaya IP Agent R7.	84
Applying product updates	84
Changing or removing Avaya IP Agent	84
Introduction	84
Steps for interactively uninstalling Avaya IP Agent.	85
Silently uninstalling Avaya IP Agent	85
Chapter 4: Avaya IP Agent enhanced configuration options	87
Configuring the Launch toolbar	87
Enabling the Launch toolbar	88
Configuring the Launch toolbar dialog.	89
Example: Using IP Agent Dialer	92
Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration	92

Enabling Configuration Administration	93
Before you begin.	93
Steps to create a *.reg file	94
Steps to modify a *.reg file	97
Configuring Instant Messaging	97
Enabling Instant Messaging	98
Configuring messaging settings	98
Configuring and using the Click-to-Dial feature	98
Enabling the Click-to-Dial feature	99
Using the Click-to-Dial feature	99
Disabling Click-to-Dial.	100
Configuring and using the Quick-Dial feature for Microsoft Outlook	100
Enabling the Quick-Dial feature.	100
Using the Quick-Dial feature	101
Configuring the Emergency Call Handling Service	102
Administering the Avaya communication server for Emergency Call Handling	102
Administering Avaya IP Agent for Emergency Call Handling	102
Configuring Avaya IP Agent for VPN configurations	104
Steps	104
Installing the Quality of Service Packet Scheduler	105
Before you begin.	106
Configuring Alternate Gatekeeper on Avaya communication servers	106
Alternate Gatekeeper configuration	106
Configuring server load balancing across gatekeepers	107
Load Balancing configuration	107
Load Balancing documentation	107
Chapter 5: Starting and Stopping Avaya IP Agent	109
Starting Avaya IP Agent	109
Steps for starting Avaya IP Agent	109
Initializing IP Endpoint configurations	110
Steps for using the Configuration Wizard	110
Initializing Callmaster VI configurations	119
Registering with the Avaya communication server	120
Before you begin.	120
Setting default registration information	120
Steps for registering with a server	121
Registering while using a VPN	123
Logging in as an agent (EAS)	123

Contents

Steps for logging in (EAS)	124
Logging in as an agent (non-EAS)	125
Before you begin.	125
Steps for logging in (non-EAS)	125
Logging out of Avaya IP Agent	126
Steps	126
Exiting Avaya IP Agent	127
Steps	127
Using alternate user interfaces	127
AutoAnswer interface	128
Mini interface.	128
Titlebar interface.	128
Selecting an alternate interface.	128
Accessing features	129
Returning to the main interface.	129
Returning to a previously-used alternate user interface	129
Removing alternate user interfaces	130
Renaming alternate user interfaces	130
Chapter 6: Avaya IP Agent basic operations	131
Selecting an agent work mode	131
Definitions of agent work modes	131
Changing work modes	132
Handling incoming calls.	133
Answering a call	133
Telecommuter (Auto-Answer).	134
Road Warrior and Callmaster VI	135
Road Warrior and Callmaster VI (Auto-Answer)	135
IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone	136
Holding a call.	136
Using Manual Hold.	137
Using Auto Hold	137
Reconnecting to a call on hold	137
Releasing a call	137
Steps for releasing a call	138
Dropping a call	138
Transferring a call	139
Before you begin.	139
Basic call transfer	139
Unsupervised call transfer	140

Enhanced call transfer	141
Conferencing calls	142
Basic Conference	143
Enhanced Conference	145
Handling outgoing calls	147
Recent Calls list	148
Using the Contact Directory	149
Using the Contacts window	153
Speed Dial	157
Abbreviated Dial button	160
Using instant messaging	160
Starting an instant message session	161
Sending and receiving instant messages	162
Changing your presence state	162
Blocking users	163
Tracking user presence states	164
Viewing message history	164
Other instant messaging features	165
Using the Web Dialer in Internet Explorer	167
Displaying the Web Dialer toolbar	168
Calling a telephone number through the Web Dialer toolbar	168
Calling a previously-dialed telephone number	168
Using the Avaya IP Agent button	168
Using the Web Dialer context menu item	169
Chapter 7: Agent Greetings	171
Creating agent greetings	172
Steps for creating an agent greeting	172
Setting the active agent greeting	173
Steps for setting an active agent greeting	173
Setting activation criteria for agent greetings	173
Steps for setting agent greeting activation criteria	174
Deleting agent greetings	174
Steps for deleting an agent greeting	175
Copying agent greeting files	175
Chapter 8: Using VuStats	177
Configuring an extension for VuStats through the Avaya communication server	177
Configuration	177
Viewing a single set of VuStats information in Avaya IP Agent	178

Contents

Before you begin.	178
Steps	178
Adjusting intervals for monitoring VuStats	179
Before you begin.	179
Steps	180
Chapter 9: Using a Public Directory with Avaya IP Agent	181
Defining a Public Directory service	181
Steps for defining a Public Directory service	181
Searching a Public Directory	183
Before you begin.	183
Steps for searching a Public Directory.	183
Selecting the fields to display and the order	186
Steps for displaying Public Directory fields	187
Identifying multiple telephone number fields	188
Steps for identifying telephone number fields.	188
Deleting a Public Directory service	189
Steps for deleting a Public Directory service	189
Chapter 10: Screen pops	191
Creating a Windows application screen pop	192
Steps for creating an application screen pop	192
Creating a DDE screen pop	197
Steps for creating a DDE screen pop.	197
Setting the active screen pop	201
Steps for setting an active screen pop.	201
Modifying a screen pop	202
Steps for modifying a screen pop	202
Deleting a screen pop	203
Steps for deleting a screen pop	203
Chapter 11: Dialog Reference	205
Main window and menus	205
Menu bar	205
Toolbars	215
Information panels.	220
System Tray icon	221
Avaya IP Agent option dialogs	222
General Settings panel	223
ACD Agent panel	226

Call Handling panel	227
Contact History panel	228
Call Information Display panel	229
Desktop Integration panel	230
Database Options panel	231
User Interface Options panel	232
External Number Format panel	233
Internal Dial Plan panel	234
Event Logging panel	235
Greetings Options panel	236
Voice Message Number panel	237
Phone Settings panel	238
Feature Access panel	239
Login Settings dialog box	240
Login tab	241
Call Server tab	242
IM tab	243
Audio tab	244
Emergency tab	245
Advanced tab	246
Instant Messaging settings	247
Alerts tab	248
Privacy tab	249
Status tab	250
History tab	251
Responses tab	252
Agent Greetings settings	252
Greeting Description settings	253
ANI settings	254
VDN settings	255
Prompted Digits settings	256
Audio settings	257
Audio Options dialog box	257
Audio Monitor dialog box	259
Volume and Ringer Settings dialog box	260
Audio Tuning Wizard	261
Appendix A: Shortcut keys	263
Shortcut key functions	263
Call features	263

Contents

Agent features	264
Avaya IP Agent features	264
Windows features	265
Appendix B: Language support	267
Untranslated components.	267
Supported languages for Avaya IP Agent	267
Appendix C: Troubleshooting	269
Diagnostic log files	269
Login	270
Voice-over-IP	274
Making and receiving calls	278
Other	280
Alternative solution possibilities	283
Appendix D: IP Agent Bluetooth Integrator	285
Before you begin.	285
Installing the Bluetooth Utility	286
Configuring the Bluetooth Integrator.	287
Pairing the Bluetooth headset	287
Connecting to the Avaya Bluetooth Integrator	288
Configuring IP Agent	288
Logging in to IP Agent.	289
Glossary	291
Index	301

Preface

This section contains the following topics:

- [Purpose](#) on page 11
- [Audience](#) on page 11
- [Reasons for reissue](#) on page 11
- [Related documents](#) on page 12

Purpose

This document, *Avaya IP Agent Installation and User Guide*, includes information that you need to know in order to install and use Avaya IP Agent Release 7 (IP Agent R7). It also provides information on IP Agent R7 features, basic operation, and administrative tasks.

Audience

This guide is intended primarily for anyone who is installing or using IP Agent R7 and performing station administration on an Avaya MultiVantage system or Avaya Media Server using Avaya Communication Manager. It assumes that you are familiar with the following items:

- The personal computer on which Avaya IP Agent R7 will be installed and run
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional or Windows Vista Business, Enterprise, or Home Premium
- Standard *Windows* conventions and terminology
- Contact center configurations and operations

Reasons for reissue

This release of *Avaya IP Agent Installation and User Guide* includes the following new topics:

- Microsoft Installer (MSI) technology

Preface

- Enhanced configuration administration
- Third party application launch from within IP Agent R7
- Wireless headset support
- Feature enhancements
- Notes and information related to IP Agent R7 operation on Windows Vista

See [New features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7](#) on page 14 for a complete listing of the enhancements for IP Agent R7.

Related documents

The following documents can help you configure your Avaya communication server for use with Avaya IP Agent R7:

- *Administrator's Guide for Avaya MultiVantage Software*
- *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*

Chapter 1: Introduction

This chapter provides introductory and basic information about Avaya IP Agent.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [What is Avaya IP Agent?](#) on page 13
- [New features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7](#) on page 14
- [Avaya IP Agent configurations](#) on page 19
- [Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 24
- [Network compatibility](#) on page 28
- [Voice-over-IP considerations](#) on page 28

What is Avaya IP Agent?

Avaya IP Agent is a software application with advanced telephony features for agents in a contact center. Agents can use it to work in the following methods

- On-site at the contact center
- On-site or off-site using Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)
- Off-site using analog connections over a Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)

The advanced telephony features are controlled by Avaya IP Agent through its direct communication with an Avaya communication server.

Agents who are not located at the contact center can connect to the Avaya communication server in the contact center and receive calls as if they were present at their contact center workstation. For example, if an agent cannot travel to the contact center because of transportation problems or weather conditions, the agent can still take calls by using Avaya IP Agent to connect to the Avaya communication server.

This section contains the following topics:

- [New features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7](#) on page 14
- [Avaya IP Agent features](#) on page 15

New features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7

The following is a list of the new features for Avaya IP Agent Release 7 (IP Agent R7):

- **Enhanced security** - IP Agent enables enhanced desktop security. See [Avaya IP Agent features](#) on page 15
- **New installation program** - IP Agent R7 includes an entirely new installation program based on Microsoft Installer (MSI) installation technology. This program provides fully interactive and silent installation options. See [Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations](#) on page 63.
- **Launch toolbar** - In IP Agent R7 the Launch toolbar provides the ability to centralize and organize third party application tools on the Avaya IP Agent main application window. You can also use the new ipaDialer program to configure speed dial buttons on the Launch toolbar. The Launch toolbar supports up to 23 customizable launch items. See [Configuring the Launch toolbar](#) on page 87.
- **Web Dialer** - IP Agent R7 adds new "Click-to-dial" functionality to the Web Dialer context menu that allows you to quickly dial highlighted telephone numbers in a Windows Explorer window. See [Using the Web Dialer context menu item](#) on page 169.
- **Configuration Administration** - In IP Agent R7 new functionality allows you to define and export configuration information for use on other PCs, or import previously defined configuration information to set local parameters. See [Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration](#) on page 92.
- **Agent greetings** - IP Agent R7 increases the default number of agent greetings to 60. See [Agent Greetings](#) on page 171.
- **Audio feature access restrictions** - In Release 7, selection access to the Audio Tuning Wizard, Audio Options and Audio Monitor can be restricted. These audio features are normally accessible from the Audio menu on the main application window. See [Audio menu](#) on page 213.
- **Expanded dial plan** - A new Program Options Feature is introduced in IP Agent R7 to allow multiple or combination dial plans to be defined to handle internal calls. See [Internal Dial Plan panel](#) on page 234.

 **Important:**

For a phone number to be correctly reformatted and stored in the application database, the enabled dial plan option must be set prior to accepting or generating calls or creating contact phone numbers.

- **Avaya Bluetooth Integrator** - With IP Agent R7 (on Windows XP only) you can use Bluetooth-enabled headsets to answer, mute and release calls. The Bluetooth Integrator is available in the Road Warrior configuration only. See [IP Agent Bluetooth Integrator](#) on page 285.

- **Crash analysis support** - In the event an unhandled exception occurs in IP Agent, a pair of new files are generated in the application data \Log Files folder. See [Diagnostic log files](#) on page 269.
- **Support of high definition audio chipsets** - All IP Agent R7 features that depend on support of the underlying PC sound system are now compatible with the Intel® High Definition Audio14 chipset standard and the drivers that support it.
- **Encrypted signal link** - IP Agent R7 supports encryption of the signal link between IP Agent R7 and the serving Communication Manager (CM). This security option must be configured in compliance with the CM administered settings for the network region definition to which the extension being registered belongs. See your CM documentation for details.

Avaya IP Agent features

The following lists provide the main features that are available in Avaya IP Agent:

Available configurations and supported communication servers

- Support of Avaya MultiVantage, and Communication Manager systems.
- Road Warrior configuration (Voice-over-IP) - Agents can connect to the Avaya communication server by using their personal computer and an IP network connection. In this configuration, a telephone set is not necessary because all communication is performed through a sound device of the personal computer.
- Telecommuter configuration - Agents using an analog or Digital Communication Protocol (DCP) telephone can use the advanced call features provided by the Avaya communication server. For example, an agent working from home can use Avaya IP Agent and their home telephone to transfer calls, place calls on hold, change agent work mode, and do other call center activities.
- Avaya Callmaster VI configuration - Avaya IP Agent running on Windows XP supports usage of Avaya Callmaster VI telephones. Sections of this document address configuration and usage of Avaya Callmaster VI telephones.
- Instant Messaging Only configuration - Avaya IP Agent does not register with an Avaya communication server for telephony capabilities, but does register with SIP Enablement Services for the purpose of instant messaging.
- IP Telephone configuration - Agents using an IP telephone can use Avaya IP Agent in the same manner as with the Telecommuter configuration. Features that are assigned to the extension can be used through the Avaya IP Agent user interface. In this configuration, Avaya IP Agent logs in to the telephone itself.

- Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration - Agents using a Digital Communication Protocol (DCP) telephone in the contact center can use Avaya IP Agent to share control of the telephone and its features. While the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration is similar to the Telecommuter configuration, it cannot use a telephone number that is different from the extension. For agents that are in the same location as the communication server, this configuration, unlike the Telecommuter configuration, does not require the creation of a second station on the Avaya communication server. This configuration is supported with Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
- Avaya Telephone-IP configuration - Agents using an IP telephone in the contact center can use Avaya IP Agent to share control of the IP telephone and its features with the Avaya communication server. While the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration is similar to the Telecommuter configuration, it cannot use a telephone number that is different from the extension. In this configuration, Avaya IP Agent logs in to the communication server, not the telephone as in the IP Telephone configuration.
- Windows Terminal Services compatibility - Those contact centers that use Windows Terminal Services can use a special version of Avaya IP Agent to facilitate usage of the Telecommuter configuration in that environment.

Call and contact center features

- VuStats support - Avaya IP Agent can display multiple lines of VuStats information in the **VuStats Monitor** dialog box. You can use VuStats information to assist in complete monitoring of the contact center.
- Agent greetings - Agents can record and configure multiple agent greetings based on such variables as login status, agent work mode, agent ID, prompted digits, Automatic Number Identification (ANI), or Vector Directory Number (VDN). Agent greetings are available in the Road Warrior and Callmaster VI configurations. Using an Avaya Switcher II headset, (on Windows XP only) agent greetings can also be used in the Telecommuter configuration. For those call centers that want to have standard greetings for all agents, agent greetings can also be stored on network drives.
- Support for dynamic Quality of Service (QoS) - If the QoS parameters have not been configured on the personal computer for an IP Endpoint configuration, Avaya IP Agent downloads the QoS parameters configured on the Avaya communication server and configures the IP Endpoint. QoS is by default automatically installed by Avaya IP Agent. You can choose to not install QoS by deselecting it on the Custom Setup page of the installation program.
- Emergency Call Handling Service (E911) - With this feature, agents using IP Endpoints can use numbers that connect to emergency services, such as 911 in the United States. Only those emergency services in the Public Safety Answering Point area where the Avaya communication server is located can be reached. Agents or extensions in remote locations should not use this feature for emergencies.
- External Number Formatting - For international users, Avaya IP Agent allows you to define how many digits are present in telephone numbers outside the contact center.

- User-to-user information (UUI) screen pop enhancement - Using external applications, unique identifiers can be added to incoming calls. If your Avaya communication server has the correct features and configuration, these identifiers can be passed to Avaya IP Agent and used in screen pops for agents.

Contact management features

- Contact history - Avaya IP Agent records a complete contact history of incoming and outgoing calls, even for those calls where the caller does not leave a voice message. This feature also records the time and date of all instant message sessions.
- Contact Directory- Avaya IP Agent provides a customizable contact directory that lists telephone numbers, e-mail addresses, and instant messaging user names for each contact.
- Search Public Directory - With this feature, agents have the ability to search through public or company information using the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP).
- Screen Pops - Screen Pops can be initiated when a call is received or placed. Avaya IP Agent provides agents with the ability to display Web pages, start applications, or retrieve and display caller information from a database. Screen pops are created using the **Screen Pops Wizard**, which guides you through their creation. A screen pop can consist of any process or application that can be initiated through one of the commands in the following list:
 - Windows executable or registered file type activation
 - Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) "Execute" or "Poke" commands

Usability features

- Clipboard dialing - Avaya IP Agent can be used to dial any number copied to the clipboard or, in most personal computer applications, used to dial a number that an agent highlights by right-clicking on the Avaya IP Agent icon in the System Tray.
- Enhanced Phone features - The **Phone Features** window displays all of the features that have been assigned to the station. Through this window, users can arrange these features into custom folders to fit their needs and maximize usability.
- Enhanced System Tray icon - The Avaya IP Agent icon in the System Tray contains release, drop, hold, transfer, conference, and agent work mode functions.
- Automatic login - An agent can automatically log in to the Avaya communication server when Avaya IP Agent is started. Avaya IP Agent uses the login information from the previous login.
- Speed dialer - Agents can assign telephone numbers to function keys (F2 through F8) so that the agent can dial the telephone number simply by pressing the associated key.
- Voice message icon - When voice messages are present for the extension currently in use, an icon is displayed in the System Tray. When it has been configured, you can click on this icon to connect to your voice mail system.

- Alternate user interfaces - These interfaces can be used in place of the standard interface. These alternate interfaces use much less space on your desktop, and then can eliminate the problem of the previous Avaya IP Agent interface being hidden behind other applications or requiring too much space on the desktop.

Security and management features

- Silent installation - In Avaya IP Agent R7, installations without user interaction are accomplished through the use of MSI command-line parameters.
- Media encryption - The Avaya iClarity IP Audio component of Avaya IP Agent encrypts communication between itself and the Avaya communication server. This provides a reassuring level of security in communications conducted over your contact center network.
- Feature deactivation - Administrators can deactivate Avaya IP Agent features that should not be configured or used by agents. The features that can be deactivated include Screen Pops, Contact Directory, Public Search Directory, Contact History, Phone Features configuration, Program Options, Speed Dials, VuStats, Agent Greeting selection, Launch toolbar, Audio Monitor, Audio Options, Audio Tuning Wizard, Configuration Admin, Desktop Integration, Import settings, and Export settings.
- Configurable database location - You can change the location where the Avaya IP Agent database is stored. This database contains the contact directory and the contact history information.
- Support for Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) - The Avaya iClarity IP Audio component supports substitution of *SHIM-based* IPsec client addresses for the local IP address within H.323 signalling messages.
- Alternate Gatekeeper - When an agent registers an IP Endpoint with an Avaya communication server, a C-LAN circuit pack IP address is sent by the server to the IP Endpoint. If registration is successful, the Avaya communication server sends back the IP addresses of all the C-LAN circuit packs in the network region. These addresses can be used if call signaling on the original C-LAN circuit pack fails.
- Support for server load balancing across gatekeepers - Registration and usage of Avaya communication servers can be distributed across multiple C-LAN circuit packs within a network region. This increases performance and reliability for all IP Endpoints.
- Application updates - This feature can be used to search for updates to Avaya IP Agent. During each start of Avaya IP Agent, the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) address specified is searched. If an update is found, it is installed. This feature saves time and effort for administrators because they do not need to visit each installation or create remote administration scripts through third-party applications.

- Secure operation - Best practice has developed such that Microsoft Windows Desktop applications are designed to run with the most restrictive user privileges possible. In particular, they should not be required to run unrestricted with Administrator privileges. IP Agent R7 can write only to the current user Documents folder \Documents and Settings*<user>*\Application Data\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\, and can only modify the Current User registry hive.

Avaya IP Agent configurations

Avaya IP Agent supports the following configurations:

- [Road Warrior configuration \(Voice-over-IP\)](#) on page 19
- [Telecommuter configuration](#) on page 20
- [IP Telephone configuration](#) on page 21
- [Callmaster VI configuration \(DCP connection\)](#) on page 22
- [Avaya Telephone control by the server](#) on page 22
- [Instant Messaging](#) on page 24

Road Warrior configuration (Voice-over-IP)

Use the Road Warrior configuration in situations where an agent at a personal computer can make a dial-up or network connection to an Avaya communication server. This configuration does not use a telephone, which, obviously, is valuable when a telephone is not available. The single network connection between the personal computer running Avaya IP Agent and the Avaya communication server has two channels, one for signaling (data) and one for voice. Avaya IP Agent controls the data flow while the iClarity IP Audio (an H.323 V2-compliant audio application) handles voice communications. This type of configuration provides the best IP audio quality that is possible with your connection speeds, personal computer performance, and network setup. Agents make and receive calls through the Avaya IP Agent interface using a headset connected to the personal computer or optionally through a Bluetooth hardware configuration (on Windows XP only).

What you need to know about Road Warrior configuration

The following list provides the Road Warrior configuration requirements and capabilities:

- Connection - One dial-up or network connection from the personal computer running Avaya IP Agent to the Avaya communication server
- Personal computer hardware

- Sound card (full-duplex recommended) or Universal Serial Bus (USB) headset
- Modem or network interface card for connectivity to the Avaya communication server

Note:

For detailed information on supported hardware, see the listings for IP Softphone at <http://support.avaya.com>.

- Telephone - Not supported in this configuration
- Bluetooth - Optional third party hardware required (for use on Windows XP only)
- Voice quality - Dependent on the performance of the personal computer hardware, the amount of bandwidth available in the network connection, and network stability
- Agent greetings - Stored on the personal computer or a network drive
- Avaya communication server connections - One user connection

Note:

Voice-over-IP does not necessarily provide *toll-quality* audio.

Telecommuter configuration

Use the Telecommuter configuration in situations where a personal computer can make a dial-up or network connection to an Avaya communication server for the signaling (data) path and a voice path to a telephone sent through a Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) connection. The telephone can be an analog telephone, a cellular telephone, or an extension on a local or remote switch. This configuration provides toll-quality audio and full telephony functionality through Avaya IP Agent. Agents make and receive calls through the Avaya IP Agent interface, and the voice path is sent to the specified telephone.

What you need to know about the Telecommuter configuration

The following list provides the Telecommuter configuration requirements and capabilities:

- Connection - One dial-up or network connection from the personal computer running Avaya IP Agent to the Avaya communication server and a telephone capable of receiving calls from the Avaya communication server
- Personal computer hardware - Modem or network interface card for connectivity to the Avaya communication server
- Telephone set - Any telephone capable of receiving calls from the Avaya communication server
- Agent Greetings - Supported only through the use of the Avaya Switcher II headset (not available on Windows Vista)

For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:

http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf

- Avaya communication server connections - One user connection for signaling connection and one of the following situations:
 - For off-site use, one trunk connection
 - For on-site use, an additional user connection

IP Telephone configuration

The IP Telephone configuration is similar to that of the Telecommuter configuration. Through IP Agent, agents can control an IP telephone, use the features of the telephone through the IP Agent interface, and take advantage of the regular IP Agent features.

What you need to know about the IP Telephone configuration

The following list provides the IP Telephone configuration requirements and capabilities:

- Connection - IP network connection for the IP telephone and a TCP/IP network connection for the personal computer
- Personal computer hardware - Network Interface Card (NIC) for connection to the Avaya communication server
- Telephone set - An Avaya IP telephone that supports the Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) feature and is supported by your Avaya communication server. See [Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 24 for more information on supported Avaya IP telephones.
- Voice Quality - Dependent on the IP telephone, available network bandwidth, and network stability
- Agent Greetings - Supported only through the use of the Avaya Switcher II headset (not available on Windows Vista)

For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:

http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf

- Avaya communication server connections - One user connection

Callmaster VI configuration (DCP connection)

The Avaya Callmaster VI is a small telephone with eight buttons, two headset jacks, and DCP (Digital Communications Protocol) connectivity. This telephone is connected to a personal computer through a serial (RS-232) connection. This configuration is for use only inside the contact center in conjunction with Callmaster VI telephones. Connectivity for this configuration is provided through a DCP connection to the Avaya communication server and does not require a TCP/IP network connection. Callmaster VI telephones can only be used with IP Agent R7 running on Windows XP.

What you need to know about the Callmaster VI configuration

The following list provides Avaya Callmaster VI configuration requirements and capabilities:

- Connection - DCP connection for the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone set and a serial (RS-232) connection between the Avaya Callmaster VI and the personal computer
- Personal computer hardware - Serial (RS-232) port
- Telephone - Avaya Callmaster VI
- Agent greetings - Stored on the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone set
- Avaya communication server connections - One user connection

Avaya Telephone control by the server

This section includes information about Avaya Telephone control by the Avaya Communication Manager server, also called shared control.

The Avaya Telephone configuration:

- Allows a telephone and IP Agent to share control of the same administered station using the same button layout and features.
- Supports Avaya DCP and IP telephones, but not analog sets.
- Eliminates the need to define a second extension on Avaya Communication Manager.
- Functions normally without Avaya IP Agent if the personal computer is not operational.
- Useful because the administration is simple and because IP Agent is a powerful complement to a regular telephone that enables screen pops, Instant Messenger (with SIP Enablement Services), Agent Greetings (with an Avaya Switcher II, Windows XP only), VuStats monitor, and so on.

What you need to know about the Avaya Telephone configuration

The following list provides the Avaya Telephone configuration requirements and capabilities:

Connection : For shared control, you need one network connection from the personal computer running Avaya IP Agent to the Avaya Communication Manager system and an IP or DCP telephone that is connected to the Avaya Communication Manager system. For specifics, see the following table.

IP telephones	DCP telephones	
4600-series telephones	2400-series telephones and 6400-series telephones	Callmaster IV and V telephones
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Agent Release 5 or later ● Communication Manager 2.1 or later 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Agent Release 5 or later ● Communication Manager 2.0 or later 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Agent Release 6 or later on Windows XP ● Communication Manager 3.0 or later

Personal computer hardware: Use a Network Interface Card (NIC) for connection to the Avaya communication server.

Telephone set: Use any of the following types of telephones:

- Avaya 2400-series (DCP)
- 4600-series (IP)
- 6400-series (DCP)
- Callmaster IV (DCP)
- Callmaster V (DCP)

Agent Greetings: Agent Greetings are supported only through the use of the Avaya Switcher II headset. (Not available in Windows Vista.)

For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:

http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf

Avaya communication server connections: Use one connection for the telephone and one for IP Agent.

Instant Messaging

The Instant Messaging feature allows you to exchange text messages with other Avaya IP Agent users and track their online presence.

Additionally, you can use an **Instant Messaging Only** configuration where Avaya IP Agent does not register with an Avaya communication server for telephony capabilities, but does register with SIP Enablement Services for the purpose of instant messaging.

What you need to know about the Instant Messaging feature

The following list provides the Instant Messaging configuration requirements and capabilities:

- Connection - One network connection from the personal computer running Avaya IP Agent to the SIP Enablement Services 3.1 or later
- Personal computer hardware - Network Interface Card (NIC) for connection to the SIP Enablement Services
- Configuration compatibility - The Instant Messaging feature is compatible with the following Avaya IP Agent configurations:
 - Road Warrior
 - Telecommuter
 - Avaya Telephone (DCP and IP)
 - IP Telephone

Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent

This section contains the following topics:

- [Supported telephone types](#) on page 24
- [Recommended telephone types](#) on page 28

Supported telephone types

Note:

When you change telephone types for a station, you must restart Avaya IP Agent for the change to take effect.

The following table provides the telephone types that are available on the Avaya communication server and officially supported for use with Avaya IP Agent:

Telephone model	Communication platform	Additional features
Callmaster IV (603F1)	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 80-character (2x40) display ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
Callmaster V (607A1)	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
Callmaster VI (606A1)	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 80-character (2x40) display ● Expansion module available
2410	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Multiline display ● Compatible with the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
2420	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 203-character display ● Expansion module available ● Compatible with the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
4602	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 40-character display ● This telephone cannot be used in the IP Telephone configuration.
4606	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 32-character display ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
4610	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 168x80 pixel display ● Supported only on Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later ● This telephone is not supported for Road Warrior or Telecommuter configurations.

Telephone model	Communication platform	Additional features
4612	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
4620	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 168x132 pixel display ● Expansion module available ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
4622	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 8 line display ● Expansion module available ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
4624	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
4630	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 320x240 pixel display ● Use of this telephone with the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration requires Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.
6402D	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 32-character (2x16) display ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
6408D / 6408D+	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration

Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent

Telephone model	Communication platform	Additional features
6416D+	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Expansion module available ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
6424D+	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● Expansion module available ● Compatible with Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration
8403B	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display
8405D / 8405D+	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● This telephone cannot be used with the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration.
8410D	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● This telephone cannot be used with the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration.
8411D	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 48-character display ● For this telephone set, you must disable the data port, which is true for all softphones
8434D	DCP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 80-character (2x40) display ● Expansion module available
9620	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Avaya one-X Deskphone family
9630	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Avaya one-X Deskphone family ● Supports up to one expansion module in IP Agent R7
9650	IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Avaya one-X Deskphone family ● Supports up to one expansion module in IP Agent R7

Recommended telephone types

While Avaya IP Agent supports all of the telephone types listed in the previous table for the Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations, the following types provide the most buttons and features, and an 80-character display:

- 606A1
- 8434D

Because of the greater number of characters used for display, these telephone types are better suited to handle VuStats or Prompted Digits information.

Note:

For the IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone configurations, these telephone types are only valid for use if these exact telephones are in use at the location of the agent.

Network compatibility

Avaya IP Agent provides support for several H.323-compatible firewalls and Virtual Private Networks (VPNs). For *shim-based* VPNs, you must use the **Advanced** tab in the Avaya iClarity IP Audio dialog boxes used for login to set an IPsec IP address, that is assigned by the VPN gateway and that is visible to the application on the personal computer. If you need assistance, contact Avaya technical support.

Avaya iClarity IP Audio only supports VPNs using Network Address Translations (NATs) that provide one-to-one IP address substitution. VPNs using NATs that provide many-to-one IP address substitution cannot be used with Avaya IP Agent.

Voice-over-IP considerations

Voice communication through Internet Protocol requires consistent, non-restrictive network bandwidth as well as the personal computer hardware sufficient to support not only the communications of the agent, but also other tasks being performed on the personal computer. If you experience problems with Avaya IP Agent Voice-over-IP telephony, you should ensure that network and personal computer resources are adequate for the tasks being performed. Consider the topics in this section when you are determining the efficiency of Voice-over-IP in your contact center.

Real-time processing

Voice-over-IP uses *real-time* processing on your personal computer to transmit voice communication. Nearly all other processes on a personal computer use *sequential* processing which means that requests for system resources are processed as they become available. If resources are not available to process Voice-over-IP actions, the quality of the communication degrades.

Network bandwidth

Network bandwidth availability can also have an impact on Voice-over-IP communications. The codecs used for Voice-over-IP encoding can vary from using small packets for dial-up connections with reduced voice quality to using larger packets providing higher voice quality over broadband and high-speed connections.

**Tip:**

Avaya provides the *Avaya IP Voice Quality Network Requirements* as an in-depth and informative document that defines and describes all aspects of networking and how those aspects can affect Voice-over-IP communications. Contact your Avaya representative for more information.

Personal computer hardware and software

The personal computer software and hardware requirements in this document are the absolute minimum needed for operation. These minimum requirements do not take any tasks, applications, or other actions that may be occurring on the personal computer into account. If you experience problems with Voice-over-IP beyond those of configuration errors, most can be solved by upgrading the personal computer or using one with higher specifications.

**Tip:**

Voice-over-IP does not guarantee *toll-quality* audio. This is affected by numerous variables including the codec being used, network bandwidth availability, personal computer processing capabilities, sound device, network lag and packet loss, and many others.

The following information describes personal computer considerations that are related to Voice-over-IP communications. Avaya recommends that you validate your network configuration against the *Avaya IP Voice Quality Network Requirements*. Additionally, Avaya provides network assessment services to determine if your network can support Voice-over-IP communications.

Voice-over-IP performance considerations

The speed and architecture of a processor are considerations in potential Voice-over-IP performance difficulties. However, architecture must also be considered. Both Intel® and AMD® have produced economical processors for small businesses and home users that, while rated at comparable speeds to the higher-priced models, have reduced on-chip memory (L1/L2 cache). This affects real-time processing which, in turn, affects Voice-over-IP communications. Additionally, some chip sets have been created that include specialized instruction sets that optimize specific types of applications and processes. These include speech processing.

To avoid experiencing problems with Voice-over-IP communications with Avaya IP Agent, Avaya recommends using a system with higher specifications for the following items.

- Processor speed
- On-chip memory (L1 or L2 cache)
- System Bus speed

Note:

Avaya IP Agent does not officially support Cyrix™ processors.

System descriptions for Voice-over-IP

The following system descriptions provide guidelines for determining whether higher system requirements are necessary for Voice-over-IP communications.



Important:

If your system more closely resembles the *moderate-* or *high-demand* systems, an upgrade from the minimum requirements for the Voice-over-IP configuration is recommended.

Specific requirements for each type of system cannot be given because RAM, processor speed, system bus speed, on-chip memory, sound devices, network bandwidth, and applications in usage are all variables that can range widely in impact.

High demand: A high-demand system is a personal computer that uses processor-intensive applications.

The following list presents some examples of activities and applications that are used in a high-demand system:

- Multiple, CPU-intensive applications running simultaneously
- Database queries or hosting
- Multimedia applications
- Computer-Assisted Drafting (CAD) applications

- Compilers
- Streaming media

Moderate demand: A moderate-demand system is a personal computer that sometimes uses applications normally found in an office environment.

The following list presents some examples of activities and applications that are used in a moderate-demand system:

- Word processors
- Spreadsheets
- Web browsing
- Data entry
- General e-mail

Low demand: A low-demand system is a personal computer that rarely uses any applications apart from Avaya IP Agent.

The following list presents some examples of activities and applications that are used in a low-demand system:

- Text e-mail
- Simple web browsing (no streaming media)
- Minimal data entry

Chapter 2: Configuring the Avaya communication server

This section provides procedures and information on how to configure the following Avaya communication servers for use with Avaya IP Agent:

- Avaya communication servers with Communication Manager software
- Avaya communication servers with MultiVantage Software

Before agents can receive calls with Avaya IP Agent, the Avaya communication server must be configured to support extension assignments, IP connectivity, telephone types, and other settings.

 **Important:**

You should be familiar with administering your Avaya communication server before attempting any of the procedures in this section. If you are unfamiliar with the fields or settings described in this section, consult your Avaya communication server documentation for assistance.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Required Avaya communication server circuit packs](#) on page 34
- [Validating Feature Access Codes](#) on page 35
- [Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations](#) on page 37
- [Callmaster VI configurations](#) on page 44
- [IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations](#) on page 48
- [Avaya Telephone-DCP configurations](#) on page 55

Note:

The screens shown in this section are from an Avaya communication server with the Expert Agent Selection (EAS) feature. If you do not have the EAS or some other features on your Avaya communication server, these interfaces may differ slightly from the screens shown. Because of this, each step in the procedure identifies when there is a distinction between an EAS and non-EAS system.

Required Avaya communication server circuit packs

This section provides information and documentation resources for the circuit packs required by your Avaya communication server to support the Telecommuter, IP Telephone, Avaya Telephone, and Road Warrior configurations with Avaya IP Agent.

The following two circuit packs are used for remote agent connections over TCP/IP with Avaya IP Agent:

- Control LAN Circuit Pack (C-LAN) (TN799B, TN799DP, or later)
- IP Media Processor (TN2302AP, TN2602AP, or later)

This section contains the following topics:

- [C-LAN circuit pack](#) on page 34
- [IP Media Processor](#) on page 35
- [Documentation](#) on page 35

C-LAN circuit pack

C-LAN is a packet port circuit pack for Avaya communication servers that provides TCP/IP connectivity to adjuncts for applications. It has one 10BaseT or 100BaseT Ethernet connection and up to 16 DS0 physical interfaces for PPP connections. Two integrated modems provide remote PPP connectivity over analog facilities. Multiple C-LAN circuit packs can be added to a system to increase TCP/IP capacity.

This circuit pack provides data signaling over TCP/IP for Avaya IP Agent. It is used for the Telecommuter, IP Telephone, Avaya Telephone, and Road Warrior configurations where a data connection is made to the Avaya communication server. The voice path does not use this circuit pack.

Note:

Avaya recommends that the TN799C V4, TN799DP, or later C-LAN circuit pack is used for its increased ability to handle maximum capacities. Previous versions could encounter difficulties when the maximum number of active endpoints is reached.

IP Media Processor

The IP Media Processor provides the transmission of voice data over an IP network. This enables support of applications that comply with H.323-v2 protocols. It also reduces per-port costs and improves quality through its dynamic jitter buffers. Additionally, it performs echo cancellation, silence suppression, Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) detection, and conferencing.

This circuit pack provides Voice-over-Internet Protocol (VoIP) for Avaya IP Agent. It is used for the Road Warrior configuration where a VoIP connection is made to the Avaya communication server.

Documentation

For installation procedures and configuration information for the C-LAN and IP Media Processor circuit packs, see *Administration for Network Connectivity* for your Communication Manager or MultiVantage.

Validating Feature Access Codes

This section provides the procedure for administering the Feature Access Codes (FACs) on an Avaya communication server. Feature Access Codes are used by Avaya IP Agent to give agents the ability to perform the following actions:

- Change the current work mode
- Log in
- Log out
- Adjust the method with which an agent receives the next call (Auto-In, Manual-In)
- Request supervisor assistance

Before you begin

Feature Access Codes cannot be entered unless the **fac** capability is assigned in the dial plan.

To change settings on the Avaya communication server, you must have a user ID with the proper administrative permissions.

! Important:

Screens presented in this section might differ in appearance from those of your Avaya communication server. All options on the specified forms mentioned in this procedure are available, but might not be on the page noted.

Steps for validating Feature Access Codes

To validate Feature Access Codes:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

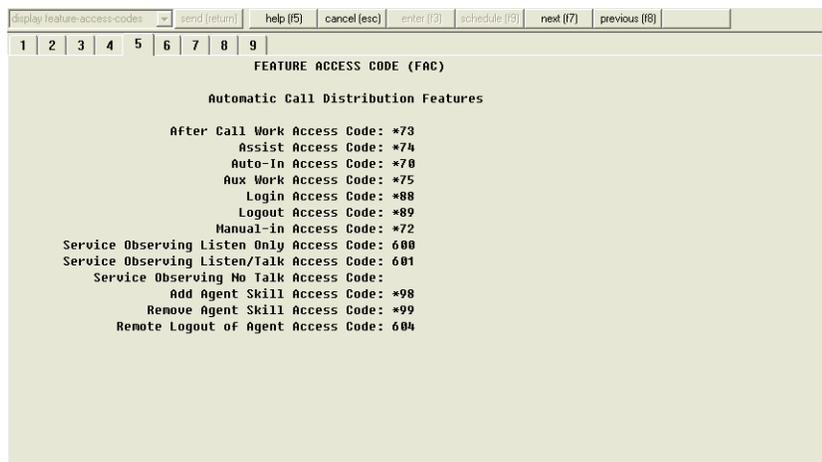
You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter **display dialplan analysis** to access the dial plan form and then ensure that the **fac** option is assigned in the dial plan.

If the **fac** option is not assigned in the dial plan, your dial plan does not currently support Feature Access Codes. For more information on configuring your dial plan for Feature Access Codes, see the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

3. Enter **display feature-access-codes** to view the **feature-access-codes** form.
4. Navigate to the **call center** portion of the **feature-access-codes** form.

Non-EAS Avaya communication servers will display only a subset of the access code fields shown in the following figure.



Note:

The Feature Access Codes shown in the graphic are only an example and do not need to be configured as such on your Avaya communication server. You are free to determine your own Feature Access Codes.

5. Administer the Feature Access Codes for **Login** and **Logout** as well as any other FACs that you want available for your agents.

For Avaya Callmaster VI configurations, you must also administer the PASTE Feature Access Code which is located on a different page of this form.

If Feature Access Codes are not assigned, see the documentation for your Avaya communication server to find instructions on adding Feature Access Codes.

Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations

If you will be using Avaya IP Agent for Voice-over-IP through the personal computer (Road Warrior configuration) or using any telephone as your extension (Telecommuter configuration), this section provides the procedures and information for proper administration of your Avaya communication server.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 37
- [Configuring station settings](#) on page 40

Ensuring compatibility

In this procedure, you set features on your Avaya communication server so that Avaya IP Agent can be used in your contact center.

Before you begin

The settings for IP connections can be enabled only if your Avaya communication server supports use of Internet Protocol (IP) for calls.



Important:

If any settings of your Avaya communication server do not conform with the steps in this procedure, you must contact Avaya to purchase the appropriate options or configuration for your Avaya communication server before you can use Avaya IP Agent.

If you need to configure a specific range of ports to use with IP communications because of firewalls or for some other reason, you must assign the range through both the Avaya communication server and Avaya iClarity IP Audio. See [Advanced tab](#) on page 246 for information on configuring port ranges on both systems.

Steps for ensuring Road Warrior and Telecommuter station settings

To ensure that your Avaya communication server supports the Telecommuter and Road Warrior configurations:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter `display system-parameters customer-options`.

The SAT displays Page 1 of the `system-parameters customer-options` form.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

G3 Version: U14
Location: 1
Platform: 6
RFA System ID (SID): 1
RFA Module ID (MID): 1

USED
Platform Maximum Ports: 44000 3906
Maximum Stations: 36000 3363
Maximum XMOBILE Stations: 36000 5
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - EC500: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - OPS: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PBFNC: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PUFNC: 0 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - SCCAN: 36000 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
```

- Navigate to Page 2 of the **customer-options** form.

```

display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

IP PORT CAPACITIES                               USED
Maximum Administered H.323 Trunks: 8000 202
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations: 12000 9
Maximum Administered Remote Office Trunks: 8000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered Remote Office Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP eCons: 128 0
Max Concur Registered Unauthenticated H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable IP Softphones: 12000 1
Maximum Administered SIP Trunks: 5000 0

Maximum Number of DS1 Boards with Echo Cancellation: 522 0
Maximum TN2501 UAL Boards: 10 1
Maximum Media Gateway UAL Sources: 250 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 80 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 320 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum Number of Expanded Meet-me Conference Ports: 300 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

```

- Ensure that the **Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations** field is set to a number greater than zero. This number represents the total number of IP stations that can be connected to the Avaya communication server at one time. IP stations can consist of Avaya IP Agent, Avaya IP Softphone, and IP telephone sets.
- Navigate to Page 4 of the **customer-options** form.

```

display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

Emergency Access to Attendant? y                IP Stations? y
Enable 'dadmin' Login? y
Enhanced Conferencing? y                        ISDN Feature Plus? y
Enhanced EC500? y                               ISDN Network Call Redirection? y
Enterprise Survivable Server? n                 ISDN-BRI Trunks? y
Enterprise Wide Licensing? n                   ISDN-PRI? y
ESS Administration? n                          Local Survivable Processor? n
Extended Cug/Fwd Admin? y                      Malicious Call Trace? y
External Device Alarm Admin? y                 Media Encryption Over IP? y
Five Port Networks Max Per MCC? y             Mode Code for Centralized Voice Mail? y
Flexible Billing? y
Forced Entry of Account Codes? y               Multifrequency Signaling? y
Global Call Classification? y                  Multimedia Call Handling (Basic)? y
Hospitality (Basic)? y                         Multimedia Call Handling (Enhanced)? y
Hospitality (G303 Enhancements)? y
IP Trunks? y

IP Attendant Consoles? y
(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

```

- Ensure that the **IP Stations** field is set to **y**.

7. Navigate to Page 10 of the **customer-options** form.

Product ID	Rel. Limit	Used
AgentSC	6 : 5	0
AgentSC	7 : 100	1
IP_API_A	: 1000	0
IP_API_B	: 1000	0
IP_API_C	: 100	0
IP_Agent	6 : 5	0
IP_Agent	7 : 100	0
IP_IR_a	: 1000	0
IP_Phone	: 12000	6
IP_R0Max	: 12000	0
IP_Soft	: 2500	0
IP_eCons	: 28	0
	: 0	0
	: 0	0
	: 0	0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

8. Ensure that the **Limit** field for the **IP_Agent Rel. 7** Product ID is set to the number of licenses you purchased for Avaya IP Agent R7.

Configuring station settings

This section provides the procedure for configuring station settings to support the Telecommuter and Road Warrior configurations.

Before you begin

Before configuring station settings on the Avaya communication server, you should have completed the procedures in [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 37 to verify that your Avaya communication server supports Avaya IP Agent and Feature Access Codes.

To change settings on the Avaya communication server, you must have a user ID with the proper administrative permissions.

If the station has not yet been created, you must create it using the `add station` command on the Avaya communication server.

Steps for configuring Road Warrior and Telecommuter station settings

To change station settings to support the Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter **change station XXXXX** where **XXXXX** is the number of the station to be used with Avaya IP Agent.

The Avaya communication server displays the **change station** form for the specified station.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled 'change station 47301'. The main content is a form titled 'STATION' with the following fields and values:

- Extension: 47301
- Type: 607A1
- Port: S19995
- Name: IP Agent testing 47301
- Lock Messages?: n
- Security Code: 1234
- Coverage Path 1: [empty]
- Coverage Path 2: [empty]
- Hunt-to Station: [empty]
- BCC: 0
- TN: 1
- COR: 1
- COS: 1

Below the main form is a section titled 'STATION OPTIONS' with the following fields and values:

- Loss Group: 2
- Data Module?: n
- Speakerphone: 2-way
- Display Language: english
- Survivable COR: internal
- Survivable Trunk Dest?: y
- Time of Day Lock Table: [empty]
- Personalized Ringing Pattern: 1
- Message Lamp Ext: 47301
- Mute Button Enabled?: y
- Expansion Module?: n
- Media Complex Ext: [empty]
- IP SoftPhone?: y
- Remote Office Phone?: n
- IP Video SoftPhone?: n

3. In the **Type** field, enter the type of telephone that Avaya IP Agent will emulate.

Avaya recommends using one of the following telephone types because of the number of features available and the ability to display 80 characters for contact center or call information:

- 8434D
- 606A1

Note:

In Telecommuter mode, Avaya IP Agent can take over the administration and functionality of a physical Digital Communication Protocol (DCP) telephone. The physical telephone must be one of those listed in [Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 24. For DCP, the physical telephone is unusable while Avaya IP Agent is registered with its extension. The telephone will become usable again when the Avaya IP Agent session is disconnected from the Avaya communication server.

If you selected the **8434D** type, and more feature buttons are needed for the station, enter **y** in the **Expansion Module** field.

4. Enter one of the following options in the **Port** field:

- **IP** - This option specifies that station administration is done without hardware.

Chapter 2: Configuring the Avaya communication server

- **port** - This option is used when a remote agent takes direct control of a real extension that has a DCP connection to the Avaya communication server. Enter the port number of the actual telephone assigned to this extension. When a remote agent logs in to this extension using Avaya IP Agent, the actual telephone that is locally connected to the Avaya communication server port is disabled and cannot be used.
5. Enter a number in the **Security Code** field that will be used as a password during the extension login to the Avaya communication server.
If a security code is not entered, this station cannot log in to the Avaya communication server.
 6. Set the **IP Softphone** field to **y**.
 7. Navigate to Page 2 of the **change station** form.

change station 47301 | send (return) | help (F5) | cancel (esc) | enter (F3) | schedule (F9) | next (F7) | previous (F8)

1 2 3 4 5 6

STATION

FEATURE OPTIONS

LMC Reception?	spe	Auto Select Any Idle Appearance?	n
LMC Activation?	y	Coverage Msg Retrieval?	y
LMC Log External Calls?	n	Auto Answer?	none
CDR Privacy?	n	Data Restriction?	n
Redirect Notification?	y	Idle Appearance Preference?	n
Per Button Ring Control?	n	Bridged Idle Line Preference?	n
Bridged Call Alerting?	n	Restrict Last Appearance?	y
Active Station Ringing:	single		

H.323 Conversion? Per Station CPM - Send Calling Number?

Service Link Mode: as-needed

Multimedia Mode: enhanced

MWI Served User Type:

AUDIX Name:

Audible Message Waiting?

Display Client Redirection?

Select Last Used Appearance?

Coverage After Forwarding?

Multimedia Early Answer?

Remote Softphone Emergency Calls: as-on-local

Direct IP-IP Audio Connections?

Emergency Location Ext: 47381

Always Use? IP Audio Hairpinning?

Precedence Call Waiting?

8. Set the **Multimedia Mode** field to **enhanced**.
9. Set the **Service Link Mode** field to one of the following options:
 - **as-needed** - Use this setting if the station has low call traffic or a toll is charged for calls.
 - **permanent** - Use this setting if the station has high call traffic or if it is set as an auto-answer station.
10. Ensure that the **Emergency Location Ext:** field is set to the appropriate setting for your contact center.
11. If the **Auto Answer** field is set to **All** or **ACD** on the station or agent form, you must enable the **Enable support for auto-answer** feature in the Avaya IP Agent **Program Options** and then reboot. You can find this option under **Tools > Program Options** in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

12. Navigate to Page 4 of the **change station** form.

13. On pages **3**, **4**, and **5** of the station administration forms, assign functions to each button that you want to appear in your Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You must assign the necessary agent work mode buttons that are used in your contact center:

- **auto-in** - This function makes agents available for new calls immediately after they finish with the current call.
- **manual-in** - This function makes the agent available to take a call and then places the agent in the After Call Work (ACW) mode when the call has been completed.
- **after-call** - This function places agents in the After Call Work (ACW) mode.
- **aux-work** - This function places agents in the Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode. Multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with different reason codes can be assigned to this extension.

Note:

You can configure your Avaya communication server to prompt for reason codes when an agent enters the **aux-work** state.

- **release** - Assignment of this feature is mandatory. This feature terminates the current call and line appearance.
- **callr-info** - This function is required only with the Call Prompting feature so that agents are allowed to display information collected from the originator of the call. The Call Prompting feature obtains information from a caller through a **collect-digits** vector step on the Avaya communication server.



Important:

The 4600, 6400, and 607A1 telephone types do not have a physical Drop button; therefore, you must assign a **drop** function for each station to ensure proper operation of the Avaya IP Agent Drop feature.

When this station is connected to the Avaya communication server, the assigned button functions are displayed in the Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You can find information on all available button functions in the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

Rebuilding Feature button and Phone feature toolbars

During station administration, if you delete a Phone Feature button from the Feature buttons toolbar, the entire Feature button toolbar will be deleted. Choose **Tools > Phone Features** and select **File > Rebuild All** to refresh phone features and rebuild the Feature button toolbar, Phone feature toolbar, and Personal Phone Features.

Callmaster VI configurations

If you use Avaya Callmaster VI telephones for your contact center agents, this section provides the procedures for configuring your Avaya communication server for compatibility with Avaya IP Agent.

Note:

Callmaster VI telephones can only be used with IP Agent R7 running on Windows XP.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 44
- [Configuring station settings](#) on page 46

Ensuring compatibility

This section provides the procedure for ensuring that your Avaya communication server is configured to support Avaya IP Agent in the Avaya Callmaster VI configuration.

Before you begin

Read and understand the following items before administering your Avaya communication server:

- A BCS/Guestworks system does not support Avaya Callmaster VI configurations.



Important:

If any Avaya communication server settings do not conform with the steps in this procedure, you must contact Avaya to purchase the appropriate options or configuration before you can use Avaya IP Agent.

Steps for ensuring Callmaster VI compatibility

To ensure that your Avaya communication server supports Avaya IP Agent in the Callmaster VI configuration:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter `display system-parameters customer-options`.

The SAT displays Page 1 of the **system-parameters customer-options** form.

```

display system-parameters custo  send (return)  help (F5)  cancel (esc)  enter (F3)  schedule (F9)  next (F7)  previous (F8)
1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
OPTIONAL FEATURES

G3 Version: U14
Location: 1
Platform: 6

RFA System ID (SID): 1
RFA Module ID (MID): 1

USED
Platform Maximum Ports: 44000 3906
Maximum Stations: 36000 3363
Maximum XMOBILE Stations: 36000 5
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - EC500: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - OPS: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PBFMC: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PUFMC: 0 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - SCCRM: 36000 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

```

3. Navigate to Page 6 of the **customer-options** form.

4. If you are using Avaya Callmaster VI telephone sets with the 606A1 telephone type, you must ensure that the PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE) feature is enabled. Locate the **PASTE (Display PBX Data on Phone)** field and ensure that it is set to **y**.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
CALL CENTER OPTIONAL FEATURES

Call Center Release: 4.0

          ACD? y                      Reason Codes? y
          BCMS (Basic)? y             Service Level Maximizer? n
          BCMS/UuStats Service Level? y Service Observing (Basic)? y
          BSR Local Treatment for IP & ISDN? y Service Observing (Remote/By FAC)? y
          Business Advocate? y        Service Observing (UDMS)? y
          Call Work Codes? y          Timed ACW? y
          DTMF Feedback Signals For URU? y Vectoring (Basic)? y
          Dynamic Advocate? y         Vectoring (Prompting)? y
          Expert Agent Selection (EAS)? y Vectoring (G3U4 Enhanced)? y
          EAS-PHD? y                  Vectoring (3.0 Enhanced)? y
          Forced ACD Calls? n         Vectoring (ANI/II-Digits Routing)? y
          Lookahead Interflow (LAI)? y Vectoring (G3U4 Advanced Routing)? y
          Multiple Call Handling (On Request)? y Vectoring (CINFO)? y
          Multiple Call Handling (Forced)? y Vectoring (Best Service Routing)? y
          PASTE (Display PBX Data on Phone)? y Vectoring (Holidays)? y
          (NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.) Vectoring (Variables)? y
```

Configuring station settings

This section provides the procedure for configuring station settings to support the Avaya Callmaster VI configurations for Avaya IP Agent.

Before you begin

Before configuring station settings on the Avaya communication server, you should have completed the procedure in [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 44 to verify that your Avaya communication server supports Avaya IP Agent and Feature Access Codes.

To use Avaya Callmaster VI telephones, you must have the PASTE feature enabled on your Avaya communication server.

To change settings on the Avaya communication server, you must have a user ID with the proper administrative permissions.

If the station has not yet been created, you must create it using the `add station` command on the Avaya communication server.

Steps for configuring Callmaster VI station settings

To change station settings to support Avaya Callmaster VI configurations:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter **change station xxxxx** where **xxxxx** is the number of the station to be used with Avaya IP Agent.

The Avaya communication server displays the **change station** form for the specified extension.

3. In the **Type:** field, enter **606A1**.
4. In the **Port:** field, enter the number of the port providing the connection for the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone.
5. Navigate to Page 3 of the **change station** form.
6. Ensure that the **DUAL LED** field is set to **call-appr**.
7. On pages **3, 4, 5,** and **6** of the station administration forms, assign functions to each button that you want to appear in your Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You must assign the necessary agent work mode buttons that are used in your contact center:

- **auto-in** - This function makes agents available for new calls immediately after the current call is finished.
- **manual-in** - This function makes the agent available to take a call and then places the agent in the After Call Work (ACW) mode when the call has been completed.
- **after-call** - This function places agents in the After Call Work (ACW) mode.
- **aux-work** - This function places agents in the Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode. Multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with different reason codes can be assigned to this extension.

Note:

You can configure your Avaya communication server to prompt for reason codes when an agent enters the **aux-work** state.

- **release** - Assignment of this feature is mandatory. This feature terminates the current call and line appearance.

- **callr-info** - This function is only required with the *Call Prompting* feature so that agents are allowed to display information collected from the originator. The *Call Prompting* feature obtains information from a caller through a **collect-digits** vector step.

When this station is connected to the Avaya communication server, the assigned button functions are displayed in the Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You can find information on all available button functions in the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

8. After you create a station and assign or modify buttons, you must perform a download for the Avaya Callmaster VI. Go to the personal computer connected to the Avaya Callmaster VI station and select **Settings > Phone Configuration** from the Avaya IP Agent menu bar.

Avaya IP Agent displays a confirmation dialog box.

9. Select the **OK** button.

IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations

This section provides the procedures for configuring your Avaya communication server to function properly with Avaya IP Agent if you use Avaya IP telephones in your contact center.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 48
- [Configuring station settings](#) on page 51

Ensuring compatibility

This section provides the procedure for ensuring that your Avaya communication server is configured to support the IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations.

Before you begin

The settings for IP connections can be enabled only if your Avaya communication server supports use of Internet Protocol (IP) for calls.



Important:

If any settings of your Avaya communication server do not conform with the steps in this procedure, you must contact Avaya to purchase the appropriate options or configuration for your Avaya communication server before you can use Avaya IP Agent.

If you need to configure a specific range of ports to use with IP communications because of firewalls or for some other reason, you must assign the range through both the Avaya communication server and Avaya iClarity IP Audio. See [Advanced tab](#) on page 246 for information on configuring port ranges on both systems.

Steps for ensuring IP telephone compatibility

To ensure that your Avaya communication server supports the IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter `display system-parameters customer-options`.

The SAT displays Page 1 of the `system-parameters customer-options` form.

```

display system-parameters custo  send (return)  help (F5)  cancel (esc)  enter (F3)  schedule (F5)  next (F7)  previous (F8)
1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
OPTIONAL FEATURES

G3 Version: U14
Location: 1
Platform: 6

RFA System ID (SID): 1
RFA Module ID (MID): 1

USED
Platform Maximum Ports: 44000 3906
Maximum Stations: 36000 3363
Maximum XMOBILE Stations: 36000 5
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - EC500: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - OPS: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PBFMC: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PUFMC: 0 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - SCCAN: 36000 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

```

Chapter 2: Configuring the Avaya communication server

3. Navigate to Page 2 of the **customer-options** form.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

IP PORT CAPACITIES                               USED
Maximum Administered H.323 Trunks: 8000 202
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations: 12000 9
Maximum Administered Remote Office Trunks: 8000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered Remote Office Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP eCons: 128 0
Max Concur Registered Unauthenticated H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable IP Softphones: 12000 1
Maximum Administered SIP Trunks: 5000 0

Maximum Number of DS1 Boards with Echo Cancellation: 522 0
Maximum TN2501 UAL Boards: 10 1
Maximum Media Gateway UAL Sources: 250 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 80 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 320 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum Number of Expanded Meet-me Conference Ports: 300 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
```

4. Ensure that the **Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations** field is set to a number greater than zero. This number represents the total number of IP stations that can be connected to the Avaya communication server at one time. IP stations can consist of Avaya IP Agent, Avaya IP Softphone, and IP telephone sets.
5. Navigate to Page 4 of the **customer-options** form.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

Emergency Access to Attendant? y                IP Stations? y
Enable 'dadmin' Login? y
Enhanced Conferencing? y                        ISDN Feature Plus? y
Enhanced EC500? y                               ISDN Network Call Redirection? y
Enterprise Survivable Server? n                 ISDN-BRI Trunks? y
Enterprise Wide Licensing? n                   ISDN-PRI? y
ESS Administration? n                          Local Survivable Processor? n
Extended Cvg/Fwd Admin? y                      Malicious Call Trace? y
External Device Alarm Admin? y                 Media Encryption Over IP? y
Five Port Networks Max Per MCC? y             Mode Code for Centralized Voice Mail? y
Flexible Billing? y
Forced Entry of Account Codes? y               Multifrequency Signaling? y
Global Call Classification? y                  Multimedia Call Handling (Basic)? y
Hospitality (Basic)? y                          Multimedia Call Handling (Enhanced)? y
Hospitality (G303 Enhancements)? y
IP Trunks? y

IP Attendant Consoles? y
(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
```

6. Ensure that the **IP Stations** field is set to **y**.

7. Navigate to Page 10 of the **customer-options** form.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
MAXIMUM IP REGISTRATIONS BY PRODUCT ID										
Product ID	Rel. Limit	Used								
AgentSC	6 : 5	0								
AgentSC	7 : 100	1								
IP_API_A	: 1000	0								
IP_API_B	: 1000	0								
IP_API_C	: 100	0								
IP_Agent	6 : 5	0								
IP_Agent	7 : 100	0								
IP_IR_a	: 1000	0								
IP_Phone	: 12000	6								
IP_R0Max	: 12000	0								
IP_Soft	: 2500	0								
IP_eCons	: 28	0								
	: 0	0								
	: 0	0								
	: 0	0								
	: 0	0								

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)

8. For the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration, ensure that the **Limit** field for the **IP_AGENTSC Rel. 7** Product ID is set to the number of licenses you purchased for Avaya IP Agent R7. For the IP Telephone configuration, verify the number of licenses for the **IP_AGENT Rel. 7** Product ID.

Note:

This configuration can use either the **AGENTSC** or **IP_Agent** licenses.

Configuring station settings

This section provides the procedure for configuring station settings to support the IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations.

Before you begin

Before configuring station settings on the Avaya communication server, you should have completed the procedure in [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 48 to verify that your Avaya communication server supports Avaya IP Agent and Feature Access Codes.

To change settings on the Avaya communication server, you must have a user ID with the proper administrative permissions.

If the station has not yet been created, you must create it using the `add station` command on the Avaya communication server.



Important:

To use an Avaya IP telephone with Avaya IP Agent, the firmware version of the telephone must be 1.7 or later.

Chapter 2: Configuring the Avaya communication server

For the IP Telephone configuration, the Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) control feature must be enabled on the IP telephone before it can be used in conjunction with Avaya IP Agent. This feature does not need to be enabled if you are administering the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration. To enable the CTI control feature:

1. Press the Mute button on your IP telephone.
2. Press 2 8 4 # on the IP telephone dial pad.
The telephone display will display the state of the CTI control feature. `CTI=manual` indicates that the feature is enabled.
3. Depending on the feature state, perform the appropriate action:
 - If `CTI=manual` is displayed, save your changes by following the prompts on the telephone display.
 - If `CTI=off` is displayed, press 1 # to enable CTI control, and then save your changes by following the prompts on the telephone display.

Steps for configuring IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP station settings

To change station settings to support the IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter **change station** `xxxxx` where `xxxxx` is the number of the station to be used with Avaya IP Agent.
The Avaya communication server displays the **change station** form for the specified station.
3. In the **Type** field, enter the type of telephone that Avaya IP Agent will control. The station type must match that of the IP telephone.
4. Ensure that the **Port** field is set to **IP**.
5. Enter a number in the **Security Code** field that will be used as a password during the extension login to the Avaya communication server.
If a security code is not entered, this station cannot log in to the Avaya communication server.
6. Set the **IP Softphone** field to **y**.

7. Navigate to Page 2 of the **change station** form.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled 'change station 47301'. At the top, there are navigation buttons: 'send (return)', 'help (F5)', 'cancel (esc)', 'enter (F3)', 'schedule (F9)', 'next (F7)', and 'previous (F8)'. Below these are page indicators '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', and '6', with '2' being the active page. The main content is divided into two sections: 'FEATURE OPTIONS' and 'STATION'. Under 'FEATURE OPTIONS', various settings are listed with their current values: LWC Reception: , LWC Activation? , LWC Log External Calls? , CDR Privacy? , Redirect Notification? , Per Button Ring Control? , Bridged Call Alerting? , Active Station Ringing: , H.320 Conversion? , Service Link Mode: , Multimedia Mode: , MWI Served User Type: , AUDIX Name: , Remote Softphone Emergency Calls: , Emergency Location Ext: , Precedence Call Waiting? . Under 'STATION', settings include: Auto Select Any Idle Appearance? , Coverage Msg Retrieval? , Auto Answer: , Data Restriction? , Idle Appearance Preference? , Bridged Idle Line Preference? , Restrict Last Appearance? , Per Station CPN - Send Calling Number? , Audible Message Waiting? , Display Client Redirection? , Select Last Used Appearance? , Coverage After Forwarding? , Multimedia Early Answer? , Direct IP-IP Audio Connections? , and IP Audio Hairpinning? .

8. Ensure that the **Multimedia Mode** field has been set to **enhanced**.
9. Set the **Service Link Mode** field to one of the following options:
 - **as-needed** - Use this setting if the station has low call traffic or a toll is charged for calls.
 - **permanent** - Use this setting if the station has high call traffic or if it is set as an auto-answer station.
10. If the **Auto Answer** field is set to **All** or **ACD** on the station or agent form, you must enable the **Enable support for auto-answer** feature in the Avaya IP Agent **Program Options** and then reboot. You can find this option under **Tools > Program Options** in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

- Navigate to Page 4 of the **change station** form.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration form for a station. The title bar indicates 'change station 47301' and includes navigation buttons like 'send (return)', 'help (F5)', 'cancel (esc)', 'enter (F3)', 'schedule (F9)', 'next (F7)', and 'previous (F8)'. The form is divided into three main sections:

- SITE DATA:** Includes input fields for Room, Jack, Cable, Floor, and Building.
- ABBREVIATED DIALING:** Features three lists: List1 (set to 'system'), List2 (set to 'group'), and List3 (set to 'personal').
- BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS:** A table with 8 rows, each representing a button function and its group assignment.

1:	call-appr	5:	manual-in	Grp:	
2:	call-appr	6:	after-call	Grp:	
3:	call-appr	7:	aux-work	RC:	
4:	auto-in	8:	assist	Grp:	

- On pages **3**, **4**, and **5** of the station administration forms, assign functions to each button that you want to appear in your Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You must assign the necessary agent work mode buttons that are used in your contact center:

- **auto-in** - This function makes agents available for new calls immediately after they finish with the current call.
- **manual-in** - This function makes the agent available to take a call and then places the agent in the After Call Work (ACW) mode when the call has been completed.
- **after-call** - This function places agents in the After Call Work (ACW) mode.
- **aux-work** - This function places agents in the Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode. Multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with different reason codes can be assigned to this extension.

Note:

You can configure your Avaya communication server to prompt for reason codes when an agent enters the **aux-work** state.

- **release** - Assignment of this feature is mandatory. This feature terminates the current call and line appearance.
- **callr-info** - This function is required only with the Call Prompting feature so that agents are allowed to display information collected from the originator of the call. The Call Prompting feature obtains information from a caller through a **collect-digits** vector step on the Avaya communication server.

When this station is connected to the Avaya communication server, the assigned button functions are displayed in the Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You can find information on all available button functions in the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

Avaya Telephone-DCP configurations

The Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration allows agents to use Avaya IP Agent as a direct interface with a Digital Communication Protocol (DCP) telephone. This configuration is used when there is no need for agents to use any of the following capabilities:

- Voice-over-IP
- A telephone outside the contact center
- An extension with a different telephone type that allows more features than the DCP telephone.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 55
- [Configuring station settings](#) on page 58

Ensuring compatibility

This section describes the setting of features on your Avaya communication server so that Avaya IP Agent can be used in your contact center.

Before you begin

The settings for IP connections can be enabled only if your Avaya communication server supports use of Internet Protocol (IP) for calls.



Important:

If any settings of your Avaya communication server do not conform with the steps in this procedure, you must contact Avaya to purchase the appropriate options or configuration for your Avaya communication server before you can use Avaya IP Agent.

If you need to configure a specific range of ports to use with IP communications because of firewalls or for some other reason, you must assign the range through both the Avaya communication server and Avaya iClarity IP Audio. See [Advanced tab](#) on page 246 for information on configuring port ranges on both systems.

The DCP telephone must be connected for Avaya IP Agent to register with the Avaya communication server. If the telephone is disconnected, registration through Avaya IP Agent will be denied. Conversely, if the DCP telephone is disconnected after registration has been made, Avaya IP Agent will be disconnected by the Avaya communication server.

Steps for ensuring Avaya Telephone-DCP compatibility

To ensure that your Avaya communication server supports the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter `display system-parameters customer-options`.

The SAT displays Page 1 of the **system-parameters customer-options** form.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

G3 Version: U14
Location: 1 RFA System ID (SID): 1
Platform: 6 RFA Module ID (MID): 1

USED
Platform Maximum Ports: 44000 3906
Maximum Stations: 36000 3363
Maximum XMOBILE Stations: 36000 5
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - EC500: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - OPS: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PBFMC: 36000 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - PUFMC: 0 0
Maximum Off-PBX Telephones - SCCAN: 36000 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
```

3. Navigate to Page 2 of the **customer-options** form.

```
display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

IP PORT CAPACITIES USED
Maximum Administered H.323 Trunks: 8000 202
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations: 12000 9
Maximum Administered Remote Office Trunks: 8000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered Remote Office Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Concurrently Registered IP eCons: 128 0
Max Concur Registered Unauthenticated H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable H.323 Stations: 12000 0
Maximum Video Capable IP Softphones: 12000 1
Maximum Administered SIP Trunks: 5000 0

Maximum Number of DS1 Boards with Echo Cancellation: 522 0
Maximum TN2501 UAL Boards: 10 1
Maximum Media Gateway UAL Sources: 250 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 80 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum TN2602 Boards with 320 VoIP Channels: 128 0
Maximum Number of Expanded Meet-me Conference Ports: 300 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
```

4. Ensure that the **Maximum Concurrently Registered IP Stations** field is set to a number greater than zero. This number represents the total number of IP stations that can be connected to the Avaya communication server at one time. IP stations can consist of Avaya IP Agent, Avaya IP Softphone, and IP telephone sets.
5. Navigate to Page 4 of the **customer-options** form.

```

display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F2) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
OPTIONAL FEATURES

Emergency Access to Attendant? y IP Stations? y
Enable 'dadmin' Login? y
Enhanced Conferencing? y ISDN Feature Plus? y
Enhanced EC500? y ISDN Network Call Redirection? y
Enterprise Survivable Server? n ISDN-BRI Trunks? y
Enterprise Wide Licensing? n ISDN-PR1? y
ESS Administration? n Local Survivable Processor? n
Extended Cog/Fwd Admin? y Malicious Call Trace? y
External Device Alarm Admin? y Media Encryption Over IP? y
Five Port Networks Max Per MCC? y Mode Code for Centralized Voice Mail? y
Flexible Billing? y
Forced Entry of Account Codes? y Multifrequency Signaling? y
Global Call Classification? y Multimedia Call Handling (Basic)? y
Hospitality (Basic)? y Multimedia Call Handling (Enhanced)? y
Hospitality (G303 Enhancements)? y IP Trunks? y
IP Attendant Consoles? y
(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
    
```

6. Ensure that the **IP Stations** field is set to **y**.
7. Navigate to Page 10 of the **customer-options** form.

```

display system-parameters custo send (return) help (F5) cancel (esc) enter (F3) schedule (F9) next (F7) previous (F8)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
MAXIMUM IP REGISTRATIONS BY PRODUCT ID

Product ID Rel. Limit Used
AgentSC 6 : 5 0
AgentSC 7 : 100 1
IP_API_A : 1000 0
IP_API_B : 1000 0
IP_API_C : 100 0
IP_Agent 6 : 5 0
IP_Agent 7 : 100 0
IP_IR_A : 1000 0
IP_Phone : 12000 6
IP_R0Max : 12000 0
IP_Soft : 2500 0
IP_eCons : 28 0
: 0 0
: 0 0
: 0 0

(NOTE: You must logoff & login to effect the permission changes.)
    
```

8. Ensure that the **Limit** field for the **IP_AGENTSC Rel. 7** Product ID is set to the number of licenses you purchased for Avaya IP Agent R7.

Note: This configuration can use either the **AGENTSC** or **IP_Agent** licenses.

Configuring station settings

Before you begin

Before configuring station settings on the Avaya communication server, you should have completed the procedures in [Ensuring compatibility](#) on page 55 to verify that your Avaya communication server supports Avaya IP Agent and Feature Access Codes.

To change settings on the Avaya communication server, you must have a user ID with the proper administrative permissions.

If the station has not yet been created, you must create it using the `add station` command on the Avaya communication server.

Steps for configuring Avaya Telephone-DCP station settings

To change station settings to support the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration:

1. Log in to the Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface (GEDI) on the Avaya communication server.

Note:

You can choose to log in to the Station Administration Terminal (SAT) on the Avaya communication server. The configuration steps are the same for either interface.

2. Enter `change station xxxxxx` where `xxxxxx` is the number of the station to be used with Avaya IP Agent.

The Avaya communication server displays the **change station** form for the specified station.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "change station 47301" with a menu bar containing "send (return)", "help (F5)", "cancel (esc)", "enter (F3)", "schedule (F9)", "next (F7)", and "previous (F8)". Below the menu bar is a grid of numbers 1 through 6. The main content area is titled "STATION" and contains the following configuration details:

- Extension: 47301
- Type: 60701
- Port: S19995
- Name: IP Agent testing 47301
- Lock Messages?: n
- Security Code: 1234
- Coverage Path 1:
- Coverage Path 2:
- Hunt-to Station:
- BCC: 0
- TN:
- COR:
- COS:

Below the "STATION" section is the "STATION OPTIONS" section:

- Loss Group: 2
- Data Module?: n
- Speakerphone: 2-way
- Display Language: english
- Survivable COR: internal
- Survivable Trunk Dest?: y
- Time of Day Lock Table:
- Personalized Ringing Pattern: 1
- Message Lamp Ext: 47301
- Mute Button Enabled?: y
- Expansion Module?: n
- Media Complex Ext:
- IP SoftPhone?: y
- Remote Office Phone?: n
- IP Video Softphone?: n

- In the **Type** field, enter the type of telephone that will be used with Avaya IP Agent. If this station possesses an expansion module, set the **Expansion Module** field to **y**.

! Important:

This field must reflect the exact model of telephone that will be used by the agent.

- In the **Port** field, specify the port that this DCP telephone will use.

This option is used when a remote agent takes direct control of a telephone that has a DCP connection to the Avaya communication server. Enter the port number of the actual telephone assigned to this extension.

- Enter a number in the **Security Code** field that will be used as a password during the extension login to the Avaya communication server.

If a security code is not entered, this station cannot log in to the Avaya communication server.

- Set the **IP Softphone** field to **y**.
- Navigate to Page 2 of the **change station** form.

The screenshot shows the 'change station 47301' form, page 2. The form is titled 'STATION' and contains the following fields and options:

- FEATURE OPTIONS:**
 - LWC Reception:
 - LWC Activation?:
 - LWC Log External Calls?:
 - CDR Privacy?:
 - Redirect Notification?:
 - Per Button Ring Control?:
 - Bridged Call Alerting?:
 - Active Station Ringing:
 - H.320 Conversion?:
 - Service Link Mode:
 - Multimedia Mode:
 - MWI Served User Type:
 - AUDIX Name:
 - Remote Softphone Emergency Calls:
 - Emergency Location Ext:
 - Precedence Call Waiting?:
- STATION:**
 - Auto Select Any Idle Appearance?:
 - Coverage Msg Retrieval?:
 - Auto Answer:
 - Data Restriction?:
 - Idle Appearance Preference?:
 - Bridged Idle Line Preference?:
 - Restrict Last Appearance?:
 - Per Station CPN - Send Calling Number?:
 - Audible Message Waiting?:
 - Display Client Redirection?:
 - Select Last Used Appearance?:
 - Coverage After Forwarding?:
 - Multimedia Early Answer?:
 - Direct IP-IP Audio Connections?:
 - Always Use?:
 - IP Audio Hairpinning?:

- Set the **Multimedia Mode** field to **enhanced**.
- Set the **Service Link Mode** field to one of the following options:
 - as-needed** - Use this setting if the station has low call traffic or a toll is charged for calls.
 - permanent** - Use this setting if the station has high call traffic or if it is set as an auto-answer station.
- If the **Auto Answer** field is set to **All** or **ACD** on the station or agent form, you must enable the **Enable support for auto-answer** feature in the Avaya IP Agent **Program Options** and then reboot. You can find this option under **Tools > Program Options** in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

11. Navigate to Page 4 of the **change station** form.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration form for a station. The title bar indicates 'change station 47301'. The form is divided into several sections:

- SITE DATA:** Fields for Room, Jack, Cable, Floor, and Building.
- ABBREVIATED DIALING:** List1: system, List2: group, List3: personal.
- BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS:** A table of 8 buttons with their group assignments.

1:	call-appr	5:	manual-in	Grp:	
2:	call-appr	6:	after-call	Grp:	
3:	call-appr	7:	aux-work	RC:	
4:	auto-in	8:	assist	Grp:	

12. On pages 3, 4, and 5 of the station administration forms, assign functions to each button that you want to appear in your Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You must assign the necessary agent work mode buttons that are used in your contact center:

- **auto-in** - This function makes agents available for new calls immediately after they finish with the current call.
- **manual-in** - This function makes the agent available to take a call and then places the agent in the After Call Work (ACW) mode when the call has been completed.
- **after-call** - This function places agents in the After Call Work (ACW) mode.
- **aux-work** - This function places agents in the Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode. Multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with different reason codes can be assigned to this extension.

Note:

You can configure your Avaya communication server to prompt for reason codes when an agent enters the **aux-work** state.

- **release** - Assignment of this feature is mandatory. This feature terminates the current call and line appearance.
- **callr-info** - This function is only required with the Call Prompting feature so that agents are allowed to display information collected from the originator of the call. The Call Prompting feature obtains information from a caller through a **collect-digits** vector step on the Avaya communication server.

 **Important:**

The 6400-series telephones do not have a physical Drop button; therefore, you must assign a **drop** function for each station to ensure proper operation of the Avaya IP Agent Drop feature.

When this station is connected to the Avaya communication server, the assigned button functions are displayed in the Avaya IP Agent **Phone Features** window.

You can find information on all available button functions in the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

This section contains procedures and important information for installing and uninstalling Avaya IP Agent on a personal computer.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Prerequisites](#) on page 63
- [Interactive installation](#) on page 67
- [Silent installation](#) on page 79
- [Upgrades and reinstallation](#) on page 83
- [Changing or removing Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 84

Prerequisites

This section provides information on the necessary hardware and software for successful installation and usage of Avaya IP Agent.

This section contains the minimum or recommended requirements for the following areas:

- [Software download package contents](#) on page 63
- [Avaya communication server](#) on page 64
- [SIP Enablement Services](#) on page 64
- [Personal computer hardware](#) on page 65
- [Personal computer software](#) on page 67

Software download package contents

The Avaya IP Agent software download package available from the Avaya Support Web site contains the following items:

- Avaya IP Agent installation program
- Avaya IP Agent program files
- A `readme.txt` file containing last minute information

Note:

Documentation in PDF format is available from <http://www.avaya.com/support> - Adobe Acrobat® Reader 5.0 or later is required to view PDF documents.

Avaya communication server

The following table shows the Avaya communication servers that can be used with Avaya IP Agent:

IP Endpoint (Windows XP and Vista)	Callmaster VI (Windows XP only)
<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Avaya communication servers with Avaya Communication Manager software● Avaya communication servers with Avaya MultiVantage software	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Avaya communication servers with Avaya Communication Manager software● Avaya communication servers with Avaya MultiVantage software

Note:

The Avaya Telephone configuration can be used only with Avaya Communication Manager 2.1 or later.

Depending on the endpoint configuration being used, Avaya IP Agent requires the following additional components on the Avaya communication server:

- Telecommuter and Avaya Telephone-DCP - A Control LAN Circuit Pack (C-LAN) (TN799B or later)
- Road Warrior (VoIP), IP Telephone, and Avaya Telephone-IP - A Control LAN Circuit Pack (C-LAN) (TN799B or later) and an IP Media Processor (TN2302AP) circuit pack
- Avaya Callmaster VI - No extra components required

SIP Enablement Services

For the Instant Messaging feature of Avaya IP Agent, you must have Avaya SIP Enablement Services 3.1 or later.

Consult the documentation for your SIP Enablement Services for the proper administration procedures regarding the Instant Messaging feature.

Personal computer hardware

The following topics present the minimum personal computer hardware requirements for Avaya IP Agent:



Important:

The hardware components in your personal computer must be properly configured and functioning as intended. Any improperly configured devices in your personal computer can potentially cause problems with the normal functionality of Avaya IP Agent. These hardware components include such things as sound card, CD-ROM drive, hard disk drive, mouse and video card.

Processor

An x86-based processor rated at 300 MHz or faster is required. For Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations, a minimum of a 400 MHz processor is required. See [Voice-over-IP considerations](#) on page 28 for more information regarding hardware resources.

Hard disk space

Avaya IP Agent requires a minimum of 30 MB. Avaya IP Agent can require more hard disk space, depending on the amount of data stored for the contact directory, contact history, agent greetings, and screen pops.

RAM

The following table shows the memory requirements for the Avaya IP Agent configurations and the supported operating systems:

Configuration	Windows XP	Windows Vista
Road Warrior (VoIP) Telecommuter IP Telephone Avaya Telephone-IP Avaya Telephone-DCP Instant Messaging	256 MB	512 MB
Callmaster VI	64 MB	Not applicable

Audio

Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations require a sound device and one of the following hardware configurations:

- Headset with integrated microphone
- Personal computer speakers and microphone

For maximum voice quality, Avaya recommends that you use a sound card that supports full-duplex operation. Use of a headset or Universal Serial Bus (USB) headset provides higher voice quality than that of simply using speakers and a microphone connected to your personal computer.

For a list of the sound cards and headsets recommended for use with Avaya IP Agent, use the **Search** feature on the Avaya support Web site at <http://support.avaya.com>



Important:

Only the Road Warrior (VoIP) configuration supports the use of a microphone through the personal computer.

Telecommuter configurations require a sound card for the proper playing of ringing sounds through the personal computer and usage of an Avaya Switcher II headset for agent greetings.

Networking

The following list provides the network requirements for each configuration type:

- Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations - A single network connection between the personal computer and the Avaya communication server
- Telecommuter configurations - One network connection and one telephone connection (DCP or analog)
- IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone-IP configurations - One network connection for the personal computer and one network connection for the IP telephone
- Avaya Telephone-DCP configurations - One network connection and one DCP telephone connection
- Avaya Callmaster VI configurations - A Digital Communications Protocol (DCP) connection to the Avaya communication server and a serial (RS-232) connection between the personal computer and the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone



Tip:

Avaya provides in-depth and informative documents that define and describe all aspects of networking and how those aspects can affect Voice-over-IP communications. You can retrieve these documents from the following address:

<http://www.avaya.com>

Peripherals

The following peripheral is required for installation and use of Avaya IP Agent:

- Mouse or compatible pointing device

Personal computer software

Avaya IP Agent requires the following software:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional with Service Pack 2 or Windows Vista Business, Enterprise, or Home Premium
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later
- For the Quick Dial feature, one of the following versions of Microsoft Outlook:
 - Microsoft Outlook 2000 SP3 or later
 - Microsoft Outlook 2003 SP1 or later
 - Microsoft Outlook 2007



Important:

Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Advanced Server, Windows 2000 Datacenter Server, and Windows 2003 Server are not supported for Avaya IP Agent personal computer-based configurations.



Important:

IP Agent R7 will not function properly if it is installed on a system that has been upgraded to Windows Vista from Windows XP.

Interactive installation

This section provides the procedure for installing Avaya IP Agent on a personal computer.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Distributed installation information](#) on page 68
- [Network-based installation information](#) on page 68
- [Before you begin](#) on page 68
- [Installing Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 69
- [Manually adding an Avaya Service Provider](#) on page 79

Distributed installation information

If you are using network management software, you can deploy Avaya IP Agent using a combination of the MSI installation technology and the remote execution capability of your management software. See [Running a silent installation](#) on page 83 for more information.

Network-based installation information

The Avaya IP Agent software download package includes a single-file executable, `setup.exe`, that installs Avaya IP Agent. If you place this file on an internal network server, desktop users can download the file to the local computer and then run the installation program under a user's profile that has administrative rights on the local PC.



Important:

The executable `setup.exe` must be run from a directory where you have write access.

Before you begin

Before you attempt to install Avaya IP Agent, ensure that you do the following tasks:

- Login to a Windows profile containing administrative privileges.
- Download the correct software from the Avaya Support site. Copy the files to a directory of your choosing. Choose from the following packages:

Package	Contains software for
Avaya IP Agent Standard (Microsoft Windows XP)	Standard TAPI R7.0 installation for Windows XP
Avaya IP Agent Service Pack (Microsoft Windows XP)	TAPI R7.0 product updates for Windows XP
Avaya IP Agent Standard (Citrix) (Microsoft Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2000)	Standard Citrix R7.0 installation for Windows Server 2000 and 2003
Avaya IP Agent Service Pack (Citrix) (Microsoft Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2000)	Citrix R7.0 product updates for Windows Server 2000 and 2003

Package	Contains software for
Avaya IP Agent Standard (Microsoft Windows Vista)	Standard TAPI R7.0 installation for Windows Vista
Avaya IP Agent Service Pack (Microsoft Windows Vista)	TAPI R7.0 product updates for Windows Vista

- Check that you have sufficient available local disk space before beginning installation.
- Close all Windows applications.
- If you are upgrading Avaya IP Agent, you should ensure that you have obtained new licenses for this version of Avaya IP Agent on your MultiVantage or Communication Manager system. If you have not done so or are unsure, contact your Avaya representative for assistance.
- Begin the installation process described in [Installing Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 69.

Installing Avaya IP Agent

To install Avaya IP Agent using the standard interactive installation process:

1. Using a Windows command window or Windows Explorer, navigate to the directory containing the Avaya IP Agent R7.0 software.
2. Run the `Setup.exe` file.

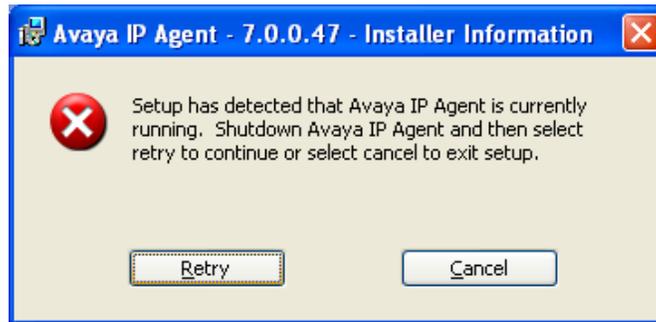
The installation program checks to verify that Internet Explorer is not running. If Internet Explorer is running, the installation program displays the **Installer Information** dialog.



Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

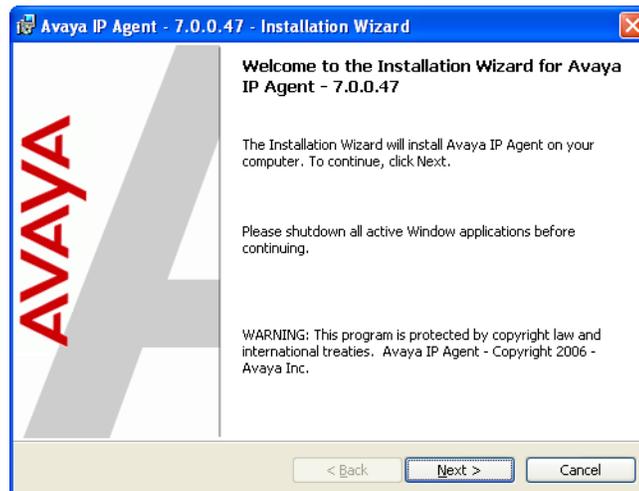
3. Shut down Internet Explorer and select the **Retry** button.

The installation program checks to verify that IP Agent, Avaya Bluetooth Integrator, the Diagnostic Support - Log File Collection utility or the iClarity Administration application are not running. If any of these programs is running, the installation program displays the **Installer Information** dialog.



4. Shut down the specified application and select the **Retry** button.

The installation program displays the window welcoming you to the installation process.



5. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **License Agreement** window.



6. Read the entire Software License Agreement carefully and select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** option if you understand and agree to the terms. Selecting the **I do not accept the terms in the license agreement** option causes the installation program to exit.

Note:

The license can be retrieved after installation. It is contained in the license.rtf file located in the application installation folder.

Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

7. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **Release Information** window.



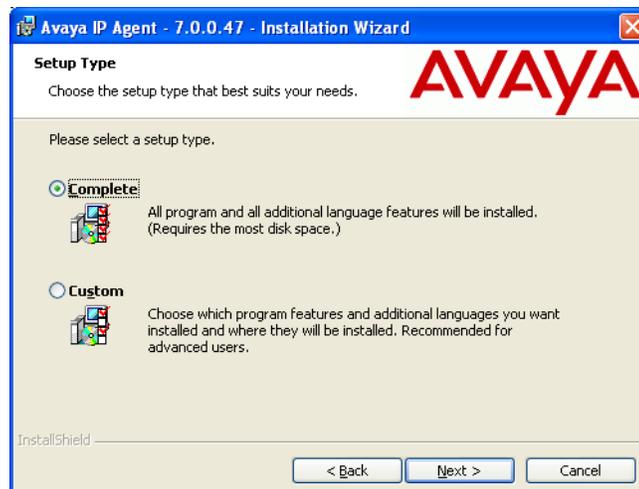
8. Carefully review the release information provided.

Note:

The release information can be retrieved after installation. It is contained in the readme.rtf file located in the application installation folder.

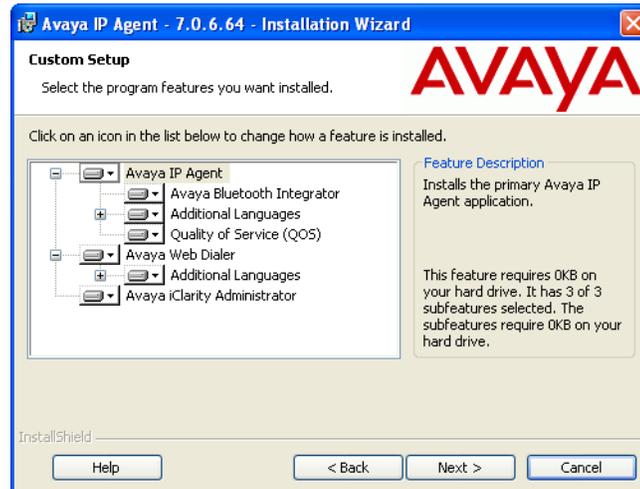
9. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **Setup Type** window.



10. Select the **Complete** option to install all IP Agent features and languages. Select the **Custom** option to specify which IP Agent features and languages you want to install.
11. Select the **Next** button.

If you selected **Complete**, continue at **Step 10**. If you selected **Custom**, the installation program displays the **Custom Setup** window.

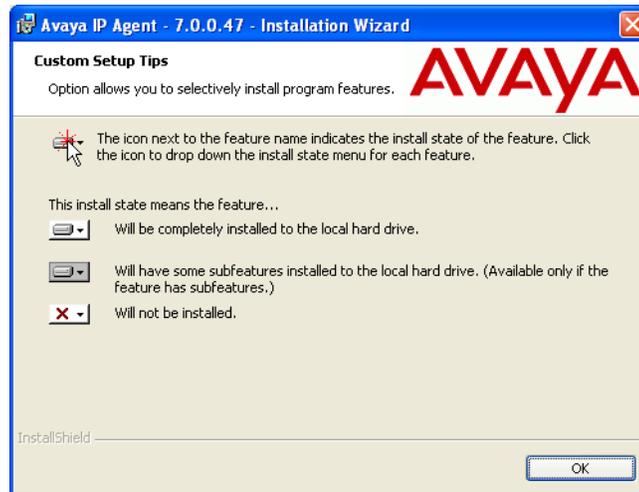


From this window you can perform a variety of optional tasks. When you are done with these tasks, continue at **Step 10**.

Optional tasks:

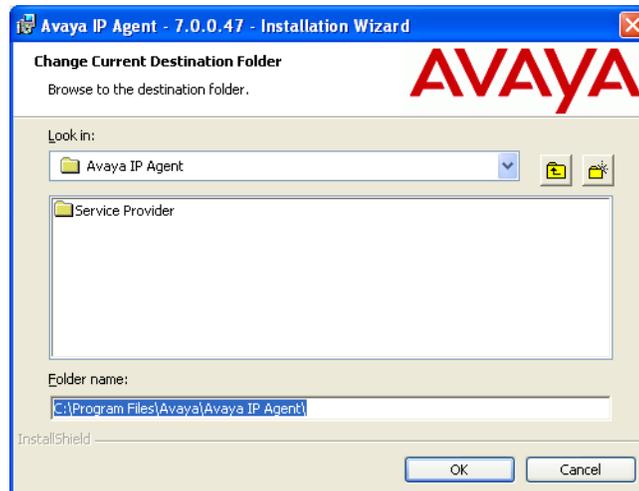
- a. To change how a feature is installed, click an icon in the **Custom Setup** window. To view the description of the icons used to indicate feature installation states, select the **Help** button. The system displays the **Custom Setup Tips** window. Select the **OK** button to return to the **Custom Setup** window.

Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

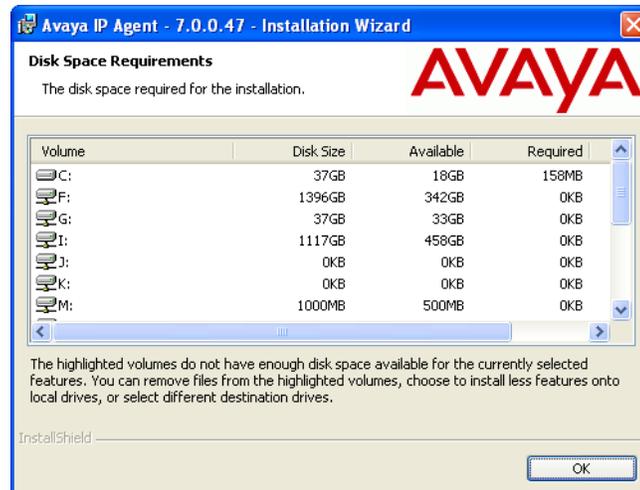


- b. To change the Avaya IP Agent destination installation location, select the **Change...** button. The system displays the **Change Current Destination Folder** window.

Enter the new location in the **Folder name:** field and select the **OK** button to return to the **Custom Setup** window.



- c. To review the amount of disk space available for application installation, select the **Space** button. The system displays the **Disk Space Requirements** window. Select the **OK** button to return to the **Custom Setup** window.



Note: Bluetooth items does not appear on Vista.

12. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **Desktop Shortcuts** window.



Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

13. Choose the desktop shortcuts you want to have the installation program create (if any) by moving the appropriate language or languages to the right list box.

You can highlight multiple fields in the left list box by holding down the **Ctrl** key and clicking the cursor on each field name.

After the necessary fields have been highlighted, select the **Add >>** button to move the selected fields to the right list box

The **<< Remove** will remove highlighted field from the right list box.

14. You can instruct the system to automatically start IP Agent with a selected language when Windows starts by selecting the checkbox and choosing a language from the dropdown list.

15. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **Start Menu Shortcuts** window.



16. Choose the startup menu shortcuts you want to have the installation program create (if any) by moving the appropriate language or languages to the **Add** box.
17. Select the **Next** button.

The installation program displays the **Endpoint Type** window.

Note:

On Windows Vista, this window does not appear. Skip to Step 18.

Select one of the following options:

- **IP Endpoint** - Use this option for LAN, WAN, and Internet connections. This includes Road Warrior, Telecommuter, and IP Telephone configurations. IP Endpoint is the only option available on Vista.

- **Callmaster VI Endpoint** - Use this option for personal computers connected to an Avaya Callmaster VI terminal through a serial connection. (Not available on Vista.)

! Important:

If you are reinstalling Avaya IP Agent, the Endpoint previously configured on the personal computer is selected by default.

Note:

This **Callmaster VI Endpoint** option is valid only for those contact centers using Avaya Callmaster VI terminals with the 606A1 telephone type on the Avaya communication server. This also requires that the PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE) customer option on the Avaya communication server is enabled.

18. Select the **Next** button.

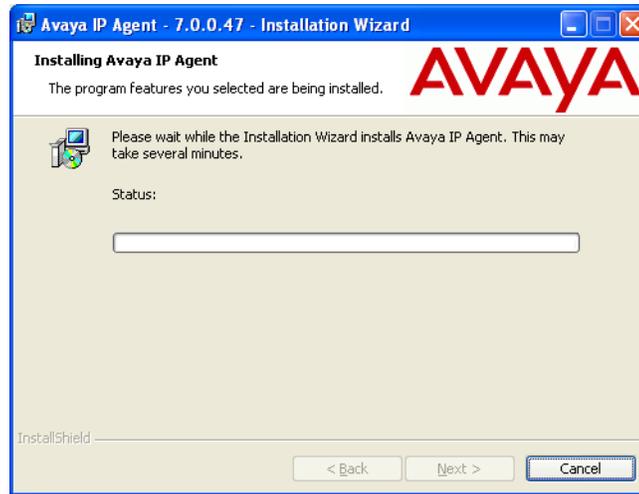
The installation program displays the **Ready to Install the Program** window.



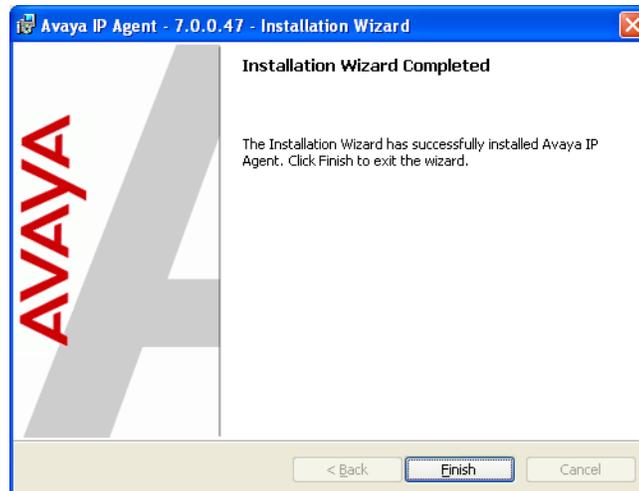
Chapter 3: Installing Avaya IP Agent for PC-based configurations

19. Select the **Install** button.

The installation program displays the **Installing Avaya IP Agent** window.



The **Installing Avaya IP Agent** window shows the installation progress, then the installation program displays the **Installation Completed** window.



20. Select the **Finish** button.

The installation program closes.

Manually adding an Avaya Service Provider

After installing IP Agent, you should reboot the PC.

 **Important:**

If you do not reboot after installing IP Agent, it may be necessary to add the appropriate Avaya Service Provider manually using the Phone and Modem Options from the Microsoft Windows Control Panel.

1. Reboot then log into the PC as administrator.
2. Choose **Start > Control Panel** and then select **Phone and Modem Options**.
3. On the Advanced tab, select **Avaya IP Service Provider** (if using IP Endpoint) or **Avaya PassageWay Service Provider** (for CallMaster VI on Windows XP only) should be listed. If one of those is not listed, select **Add** and follow the instructions on the screen to add the appropriate Avaya Service Provider.
4. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Restart Avaya IP Agent.

Silent installation

The silent installation feature allows you to programmatically install Avaya IP Agent without need of user intervention.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Before you begin](#) on page 79
- [Extracting the MSI installer image](#) on page 80
- [Command-line parameters](#) on page 81
- [Running a silent installation](#) on page 83

Before you begin

Read and understand the following items before you attempt to use the silent installation feature:

- The Avaya IP Agent installer packages, Standard and Service-Pack, contain the MSI Installer.

- To pass custom (user-defined) properties to the MSI installer you must extract the MSI installer image from the Avaya base package installers.
- Where applying a transform is required in order to modify the MSI image, you must extract the MSI installer image from the Avaya base package installers.
- The exact same MSI installer image can be obtained from either the Standard or Service-Pack installer package of the same versioned build release.
- Avaya IP Agent, Avaya Bluetooth Integrator, the Diagnostic Support - Log File Collection utility, the iClarity Administration application and Microsoft Internet Explorer must not be running during a silent installation.

Extracting the MSI installer image

You can extract a compressed MSI installer image or create an uncompressed MSI installer image. Most application administrators prefer working with a compressed MSI image.

To extract the compressed MSI from either the standard or service-pack setup.exe, at the command line, execute:

```
"c:\install\setup.exe" /b"C:\extract"
```

To create an uncompressed MSI from either the standard or service-pack setup.exe:

1. Execute the command:

```
"c:\install\setup.exe" /a
```

2. Select the **Next** button.
3. Select the **Change** button.
4. Browse to the target folder where the uncompressed MSI image will be extracted.
5. Select the **Install** button.

The uncompressed MSI image is extracted into the target location.

Command-line parameters

The following table displays the parameters you can pass to the MSI installer.

Parameter	Description
INSTALL_TYPE=1	Standard Install - Command-line property parameter used to indicate a Standard packaged base installer image.
INSTALL_TYPE=2	Service-Pack Install - Command-line property parameter used to indicate a Service-Pack packaged base installer image. Do not use INSTALL_TYPE property to conditionally determine if the installation is a silent install.
CONNECTIONTYPE=#0	Indicates that the installation endpoint should be assigned to Callmaster VI Endpoint. (Windows XP only)
CONNECTIONTYPE=#1	Indicates that the installation endpoint should be assigned to IP Endpoint.
SHOW_CM_COMPORT_CONFIG=1	Shows the COM Port dialog at the conclusion of the Callmaster VI installation. [DEFAULT] (Windows XP only)
SHOW_CM_COMPORT_CONFIG=0	Suppresses the COM Port dialog at the conclusion of the Callmaster VI installation. (Windows XP only)

Parameter	Description
<p>ADD_PROVIDER=0</p>	<p>Suppress the execution of AddProv.exe -add at install time. The execution of AddProv.exe -add is deferred to application startup where HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Config AddPhoneDriver is initialized to 1 (enabled).</p> <p>CALLMASTER VI Installation Only - Setting ADD_PROVIDER = 0 will supersede setting the SHOW_CM_COMPORT_CONFIG property. The COM Port dialog will not be shown where ADD_PROVIDER=0 regardless of the property value assigned to SHOW_CM_COMPORT_CONFIG. (Windows XP only)</p>
<p>ADD_PROVIDER=1</p>	<p>Executes AddProv.exe -add at install time. The execution of AddProv.exe -add is NOT deferred to application startup where HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Config AddPhoneDriver is initialized to 0 (disabled). [DEFAULT] (Windows XP only)</p>
<p>RETAINSETTINGS=#0</p>	<p>Indicates that uninstall should completely remove the active user's application settings and user data. Removal of user's preferences and data only applies to the current installer's windows account under HKEY_CURRENT_USER which is used to perform uninstall.</p>
<p>RETAINSETTINGS=#1</p>	<p>Indicates that uninstall will retain the user's own application settings and user data. [DEFAULT]</p>
<p>MIGRATE_SHARED_LOGIN=0</p>	<p>Indicates that uninstall should completely remove the active user's application settings and user data. Removal of the user's preferences and data only applies to the current installer's windows account under HKEY_CURRENT_USER which is used to perform uninstall. (Windows XP only)</p>
<p>MIGRATE_SHARED_LOGIN=1</p>	<p>Indicates that uninstall will retain the user's own application settings and user data. [DEFAULT] (Windows XP only)</p>

Running a silent installation

For instructions about passing specific MSI command line parameters to the MSI installer image see: <http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa367988.aspx>.

Upgrades and reinstallation

This section provides information for installing Avaya IP Agent over a previous version of Avaya IP Agent, such as V1, V1.1, V2, V3, R4, R5 or R6. (This does not apply for Windows Vista installations.)

This section contains the following topics:

- [Upgrading Avaya IP Agent V3, R4, R5 or R6 to R7](#) on page 83
- [Reinstalling Avaya IP Agent R7](#) on page 84
- [Applying product updates](#) on page 84

Upgrading Avaya IP Agent V3, R4, R5 or R6 to R7

This section provides information on upgrading Avaya IP Agent V3, R4, R5 or R6 to R7.

Data migration

The installation procedure for upgrading to Avaya IP Agent is the same as listed in [Interactive installation](#) on page 67 except for the following:

- All shared login data used in Avaya IP Agent V3, R4, R5 or R6 are migrated to Avaya IP Agent R7.
- Passwords prior to R6 will not be migrated due to encryption changes implemented in R7. Be certain you know or have obtained your station/extension password prior to upgrading to R7.
- If you select to not store information for multiple users during installation and multiple users were used previously, Avaya IP Agent will only migrate the application data for the user performing the upgrade.
- If Instant Messaging was enabled in R6, you must re-enable Instant Messaging in R7.
- If you are upgrading from a previous version of Avaya IP Agent, copy the Greeting.tbl and Greeting*.wav files from the old location to the new location, or you will get a default greeting table.

Reinstalling Avaya IP Agent R7

Reinstallation of IP Agent can only be achieved using the Repair feature of the MSI installation package. This is described in [Changing or removing Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 84.

Applying product updates

The Product Update feature of Avaya IP Agent is used to search a specific location for version updates each time Avaya IP Agent is started. See [General Settings panel](#) on page 223 for information on this feature and how to use it.

Changing or removing Avaya IP Agent

Upon successful installation Avaya IP Agent is listed in the **Add or Remove Programs** listing which is accessed via **Start > Settings > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs**.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Introduction](#) on page 84
 - [Steps for interactively uninstalling Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 85
 - [Silently uninstalling Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 85
-

Introduction

Uninstall Avaya IP Agent using the Windows XP **Add/Remove Programs** feature or the Windows Vista **Programs and Features** option. Read-only folders that are shared with other applications are not removed. If you have added any files or directories to the Avaya IP Agent installation directory, those files will not be removed.

The uninstall program removes the following items:

- All installed Avaya IP Agent files, including all language versions
- Folders created by the Avaya IP Agent installation
- Log files created by Avaya IP Agent

Steps for interactively uninstalling Avaya IP Agent

To interactively uninstall the Avaya IP Agent application, do the following tasks:

1. Close Avaya IP Agent if it is currently running.
2. In the Windows **Control Panel**, select **Add/Remove Programs** or **Programs and Features**.
3. Select **Avaya IP Agent** and choose **Change**, **Remove** or **Uninstall** (Windows Vista).

Silently uninstalling Avaya IP Agent

To silently uninstall Avaya IP Agent execute the following command:

```
msiexec /x {9A73CB15-2F2B-4EBC-B534-BE1A1EDB4A73} /qn
```


Chapter 4: Avaya IP Agent enhanced configuration options

This section provides information and procedures for configuring advanced features in a contact center that uses Avaya IP Agent.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Configuring the Launch toolbar](#) on page 87
- [Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration](#) on page 92
- [Configuring Instant Messaging](#) on page 97
- [Configuring and using the Click-to-Dial feature](#) on page 98
- [Configuring and using the Quick-Dial feature for Microsoft Outlook](#) on page 100
- [Configuring the Emergency Call Handling Service](#) on page 102
- [Configuring Avaya IP Agent for VPN configurations](#) on page 104
- [Installing the Quality of Service Packet Scheduler](#) on page 105
- [Configuring Alternate Gatekeeper on Avaya communication servers](#) on page 106
- [Configuring server load balancing across gatekeepers](#) on page 107

Configuring the Launch toolbar

The Launch toolbar provides the ability to centralize and organize application tools onto the Avaya IP Agent main application window. The Launch toolbar supports up to 23 customizable launch items. Each launch item on the Launch toolbar inherits the associated icon of the launch application or a customized icon can be specified. This icon is presented on the launch toolbar on the main application window.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Enabling the Launch toolbar](#) on page 88
- [Configuring the Launch toolbar dialog](#) on page 89
- [Example: Using IP Agent Dialer](#) on page 92

Chapter 4: Avaya IP Agent enhanced configuration options

The following example illustrates the Avaya IP Agent main window with the Launch toolbar enabled.

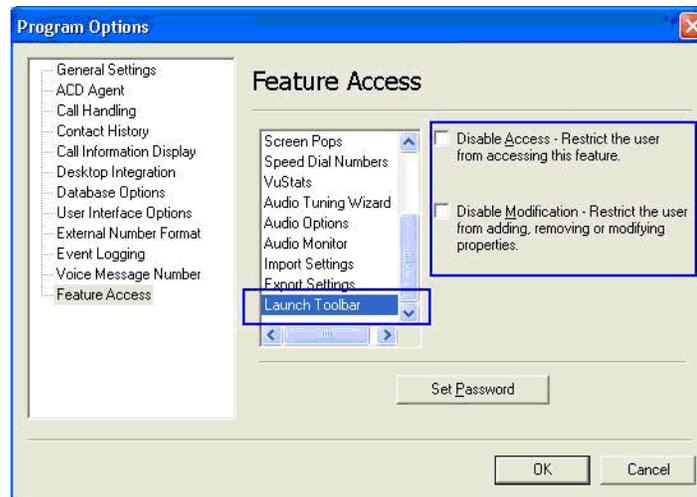


Enabling the Launch toolbar

Access to the Launch toolbar and the Configure Launch Toolbar dialog is administered through the **Launch Toolbar** option on the **Tools > Program Options > Feature Access** panel.

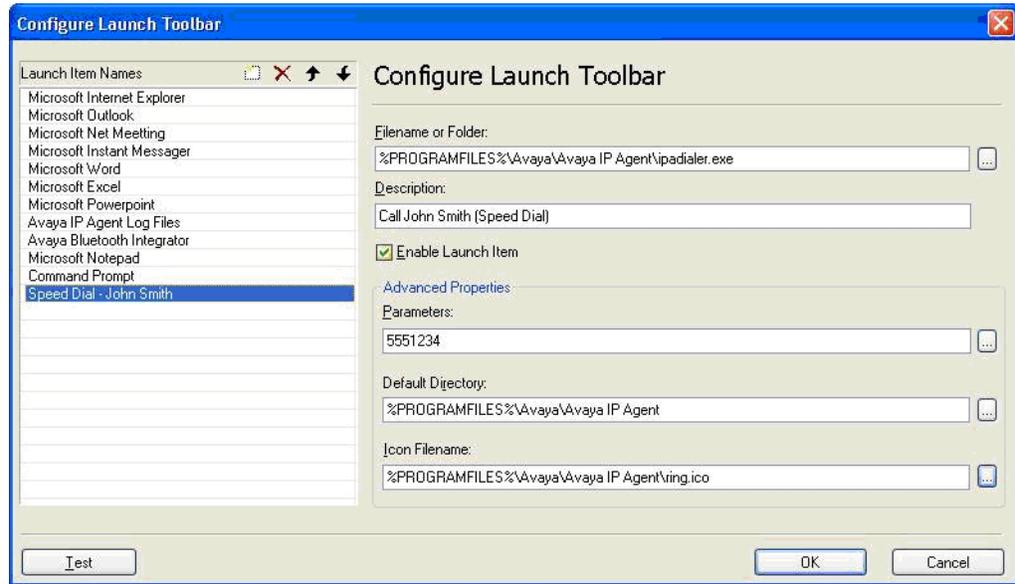
Selecting the **Disable Access - Restrict the user from accessing this feature** checkbox removes the **Launch** menu item from **View > Toolbars** on the main application and from the pop-up menu that appears when a user right-clicks over any main application toolbar.

Selecting **Disable Modification - Restrict the user from adding, removing or modifying properties** removes the **Configure Launch Toolbar...** menu item from **View > Toolbars** on the main application and from the pop-up menu that appears when a user right-clicks over any main application toolbar.



Configuring the Launch toolbar dialog

The **Configure Launch Toolbar** dialog is where administration of launch item properties is assigned. This dialog is used create, modify, delete, test or change the order of appearance of launch items on the **Launch** toolbar.



The following sections describe the use of the **Configure Launch Toolbar** dialog.

Launch Item Names

To create a new launch item, select the New button or press the Insert key. A new default launch item (Launch Item n) appears in the launch item list. You can rename the launch item as desired. The specified launch item name appears as a tooltip, provided application tooltips are enabled.

To delete a launch item, select that item in the launch item list and then select the Delete button or press the Delete key.

To move a launch item, select that item in the launch item list then select either the Up Arrow button or the Down Arrow button. To cause the launch item to appear to the left of its current toolbar button position, select the Up Arrow button. To cause the launch item to appear to the right of its current toolbar button position, select the Down Arrow button.

Filename or Folder:

Once a new launch item is created, the **Filename or Folder:** field is enabled. You can directly type in a filename or folder name or use the browse folder button to navigate to either a filename or folder using the **Browse for Folder** dialog.

If you select or enter a folder name instead of a filename, the remaining fields on the **Configure Launch Toolbar** dialog will remain disabled and empty because these properties cannot be applied to browse folder launch items.

If you directly type the filename or folder in the field, the entry is dynamically validated to verify the following executables are not included:

- ipsoftphone.exe
- ipagent.exe
- httpupdate.exe
- xmlutility.exe
- sipsoftphone.exe
- iclarity_exe.exe
- iClarityAdmin.exe
- addprov.exe
- pwreset.exe

Note:

Filename or Folder:, **Parameters:**, **Default Directory:**, and **Icon Filename:** support the use of environment variables. You can use environment variables to reduce the amount of administration effort by setting a variable to represent some consistent value. For example, you can set %PROGRAMFILES% to equal the path to the location where IP Agent is installed.

Description:

To optionally provide a short description of the launch item, enter the description in the **Description** field. The description text provides the end-user a hint about the purpose of the assigned launch item button. The description text appears on the main application window status bar as the user pauses the mouse over the associated launch item button.

Enable Launch Item

To make the launch item button visible and enabled on the Launch toolbar, select the **Enable Launch Item** checkbox.

Parameters:

To optionally pass additional values at the command line to a given third party application, enter those values in the **Parameters:** field.

In addition to hard parameter values for a given launch item, you can specify two special "runtime" determined parameter values. These values are {EXTENSION} and {AGENT_ID}. Both {EXTENSION} and {AGENT_ID} are runtime replacement parameter strings. These values are described as follows.

{EXTENSION} = Station Login Extension where the Launch Enabled checkbox is enabled and the agent has successfully logged into the extension. The launch item button becomes visible and the parameter value passed to the third party application is replaced with the end-user's login extension.

{AGENT_ID} = Agent Login ID where the Launch Enabled checkbox is enabled and the agent has successfully logged into the ACD using IP Agent. The launch item button becomes visible and the parameter value passed to the third party application is replaced with the agent's ID.

Note:

Usage of this field requires that the agent has at least once logged-into the ACD with the assigned Agent ID using the IP Agent application Agent login user interface.

The button appearing to the right of the **Parameters:** field, provides the option to insert the runtime parameter values {EXTENSION} or {AGENT_ID} directly into the field to avoid errors in the runtime parameter text.

Parameters test

When special runtime parameters are included in the **Parameters:** field, the **Enter the following parameters data** dialog is displayed. If only {EXTENSION} was included, a value must be entered into the **Extension** field before the test can continue. If only {AGENT_ID} was included, a value must be entered into the **Agent ID** field before the test can continue. If both {EXTENSION} and {AGENT_ID} were included, both values must be entered before the continue button is enabled and the test can be continued.

Below the Extension and Agent ID fields, a preview window appears. As you type a value into the field, the associated runtime parameter value is replaced dynamically in the window. Whatever literal value is typed in is the value that replaces the string token and is then passed to the third party application.

Default Directory:

To assign a default directory to use when executing a launch item, input or select the directory in the **Default Directory** field. This launch item property is important for any third party application that internally requires relative paths to its own execution location to reference dependent components.

Icon Filename:

To substitute an icon filename and button for a launch item, specify the filename in the **Icon Filename:** field. This is useful where multiple launch items use the same launched application, but where the passed parameters are different. Be certain you specify an icon (*.ico) file.

Test

To verify that the launch item is properly configured, select the **Test** button. Selecting the **Test** button passes filename / browse folder, parameters, and default directory information to the ShellExecute Windows API, which allows you to determine whether the application launches as expected.

Example: Using IP Agent Dialer

IP Agent R7 includes a new Win32 console application program called the IP Agent Dialer. The executable for this program resides in Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\ipagent.exe. The functionality provided by IP Agent Dialer is basically the same as that provided by the Web Dialer toolbar except that the dial string value is passed via a command line.

IP Agent Dialer can be used with the launch toolbar to create speed dial buttons. You can set the buttons to dial a specific phone number or to look up a database contact string value. The illustration in [Configuring the Launch toolbar dialog](#) on page 89 shows such an example.

You specify the value to pass to IP Agent in the **Parameters:** field of the **Advanced Properties** section of the Launch Toolbar dialog. When specifying a database contact string, that value must be bracketed with quotes. For example, to look up John Smith in the directory, you must enter "John Smith" in the **Parameters:** field.

Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration

A contact center system administrator can use Configuration Administration to define a set of IP Agent Program Options features, save them into a *.reg registry file, and then push the settings to the target PCs. This allows customization of the IP Agent application on multiple PCs without the need to configure each PC manually.

Each administered setting represents a configuration that is a collection of registry key/value pairs in the HKEY_CURRENT_USER registry hive corresponding to the IP Agent features.

Users with regedit.exe execution privilege may use the generated registry file with IP Agent File | Import or Registry Editor directly to configure their IP Agent features.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Enabling Configuration Administration](#) on page 93
- [Before you begin](#) on page 93
- [Steps to create a *.reg file](#) on page 94
- [Steps to modify a *.reg file](#) on page 97

Enabling Configuration Administration

Configuration Administration utilizes the familiar Program Options functionality to define the IP agent configurations. Configuration Administration is available to users with Feature Access privileges for Configuration Administration, Program Options, Import Settings, and Export Settings. Be certain that these privileges are correctly set in the Feature Access panel available from the IP Agent **Tools > Program Options** menu. See [Feature Access panel](#) on page 239.

Before you begin

The **Configuration Administration** window is very similar to the standard **Program Options** window available through the IP Agent **Tools > Program Options...** menu. The main difference is the addition of the **Export** button in the lower left corner of the window. This button saves your selected feature configurations for export to a *.reg file.

The Feature Access **Set Password** button provides the same functionality as the iClarity Administrator **Set Password** button. When both IP Agent Configuration Administration and iClarity Administrator update this password field on the same target PC, the most recent change takes effect.

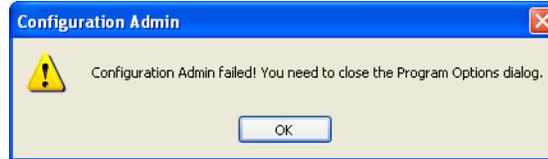
The initial Configuration Admin dialog prompts for an import registry file. This file must be generated by the Configuration Administration program. If you specify an import file, the settings in the import file together with the default settings are used to populate each feature panel. If you do not specify an import file, only the default settings are used.

Most items on the feature panels are configurable. However, you should consider the current settings of the target PC when exporting configurations. For example:

- If the Call Information Display dialog is exported, the **Display call information using Japanese font** setting will have impact on the target PC if that PC is running on the Japanese OS.
- If the General Settings panel is exported, the **Enable support for auto-answer** will be ignored by the target PC if the IP Agent is configured as Callmaster VI.

IP Agent Configuration Administration cannot configure location-related items such as database file location.

If the **Program Options** dialog is open when you attempt to use Configuration Administration, the program displays the **Configuration Admin** message dialog to prompt you to close **Program Options** and try again.

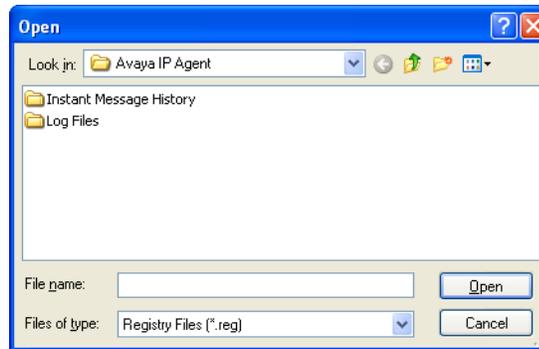


Steps to create a *.reg file

To use Configuration Administration to create a *.reg configuration file:

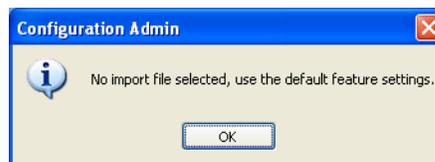
1. Select **Configuration Admin...** from the IP Agent **File** menu.

The program displays the **Open** window.



2. Select the **Cancel** button.

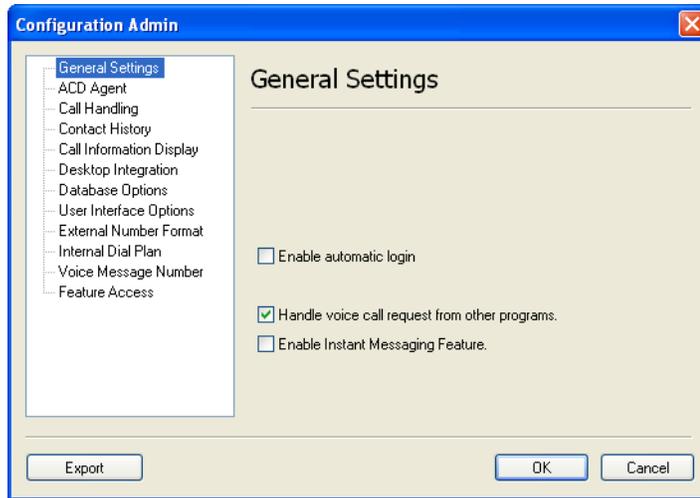
The program displays the Configuration Admin message dialog.



Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration

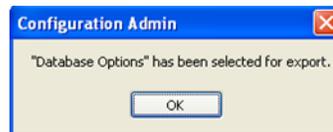
3. Select the **OK** button.

The program displays the **Configuration Admin** window.



4. Navigate through the feature list, setting configuration options as desired.
5. When you change or review a feature configuration, select the **Export** button to save that configuration as a candidate for export to the *.reg file.

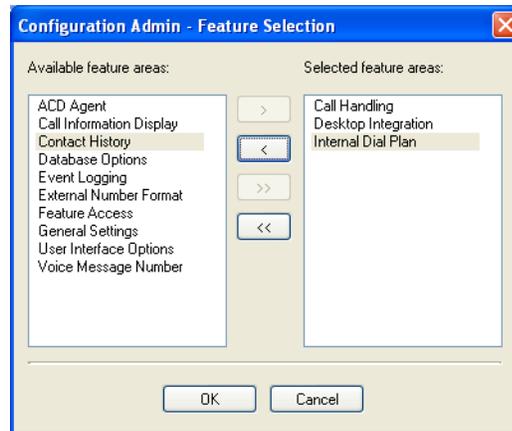
The program displays the Configuration Admin message window.



6. Select the **OK** button to continue.

Chapter 4: Avaya IP Agent enhanced configuration options

- When you have completed the configuration process, select the **OK** button.
The program displays the Configuration Admin - Feature Selection window.



- Verify the configurations you exported appear in the **Selected Feature Areas** list box. You can make necessary changes as follows:

You can highlight multiple fields in the **Available Feature Areas** and **Selected Feature Areas** list boxes by holding down the **Ctrl** key and clicking the cursor on each field name.

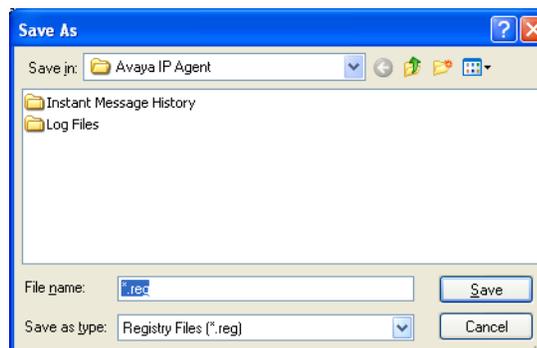
After the necessary fields have been highlighted, select the right arrow button (>) to move the selected fields to the **Selected Feature Areas** list box

The left arrow button (<) will remove the highlighted field from the **Selected Feature Areas** list box.

The double arrow buttons (<< and >>) will move *all* fields from one list box to the other.

- Select the **OK** button.

The program displays the **Save As** window.



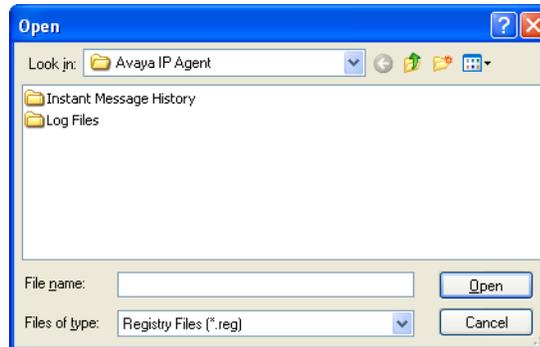
- Supply an appropriate file name and directory location and select the **Save** button.

Steps to modify a *.reg file

To use Configuration Administration to modify a *.reg file:

1. Select **Configuration Admin...** from the IP Agent **File** menu.

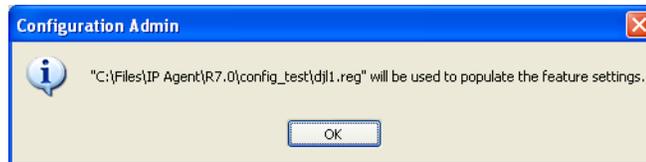
The program displays the **Open** window.



2. Select the *.reg file of interest.

3. Select the **Open** button.

The program displays the **Configuration Admin** message box.



4. Select the **OK** button to open the Configuration Admin window.

5. Modify and save the *.reg file as described in [Steps to create a *.reg file](#) on page 94.

Configuring Instant Messaging

The Instant Messaging feature allows Avaya IP Agent users to send and receive text messages with other Avaya IP Agent users. Users can also view the presence state of other users, so that it is apparent if a user is online, busy, away, or offline.

To use this feature, you must have SIP Enablement Services 3.1 or later. For more information about configuring your SIP Enablement Services for instant messaging, consult your SIP Enablement Services documentation.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Enabling Instant Messaging](#) on page 98
- [Configuring messaging settings](#) on page 98

Enabling Instant Messaging

To enable the Instant Messaging feature in Avaya IP Agent, do the following steps:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Tools > Program Options**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Program Options** window.
2. In the **General Settings** panel, place a check mark in the **Enable Instant Messaging Feature** check box.
3. Select the **OK** button.

The Instant Messaging feature is enabled.

Note:

You cannot log in to the SIP Enablement Services until you first log off from the Avaya communication server and restart the login process. For more information about logging in for the Instant Messaging feature, see [Registering with the Avaya communication server](#) on page 120.

Configuring messaging settings

To configure the Instant Messaging feature, select **Instant Messaging > IM Preferences** from the Avaya IP Agent main window. See [Instant Messaging settings](#) on page 247 for more information about the options in the **Instant Messaging Preferences** dialog box.

Configuring and using the Click-to-Dial feature

The Click-to-Dial feature allows you to use your mouse to automatically dial properly-formatted telephone numbers that appear in Web pages. This feature only functions with Web pages displayed in Microsoft Internet Explorer.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Enabling the Click-to-Dial feature](#) on page 99
- [Using the Click-to-Dial feature](#) on page 99
- [Disabling Click-to-Dial](#) on page 100

Enabling the Click-to-Dial feature

The Click-to-Dial feature is automatically installed with Avaya IP Agent. By default, this feature is disabled. If you want to enable this feature, see [Desktop Integration panel](#) on page 230 for more information.

Note:

If you change the setting for the Click-to-Dial feature, you must close and restart Internet Explorer for the change to take effect.

Using the Click-to-Dial feature

Note:

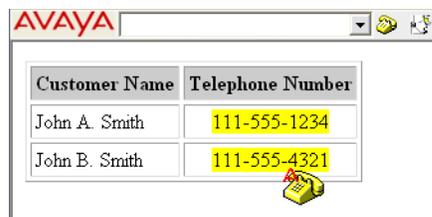
To use this procedure, the Click-to-Dial feature must already be enabled.

To use the Click-to-Dial feature to automatically dial telephone numbers from Internet Explorer, do the following steps:

1. Use Internet Explorer to open a Web page that contains a telephone number that you want to call.

Internet Explorer opens the specified Web page and any properly-formatted telephone numbers are yellow-highlighted.

2. Move your mouse cursor over one of the highlighted telephone numbers. If the Web page is an unsecured site, the cursor will change to a telephone with a red A. For secured sites, the cursor will change to a hand with an extended index finger.



3. Left-click the highlighted telephone number.

Avaya IP Agent automatically dials the selected telephone number.

Note:

See [Using the Web Dialer in Internet Explorer](#) on page 167 for more options.

Disabling Click-to-Dial

If you have Microsoft Internet Explorer add-ins or third party thin client applications which conflict with the Avaya Web Dialer you can disable it by using the **Change** option provided under Avaya IP Agent in **Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs**.

Note:

You must have administrator privileges to perform this action.

You can also disable the Avaya Web Dialer add-in from within Internet Explorer by choosing **Tools > Manage Add Ins** and removing Avaya Web Dialer.

Configuring and using the Quick-Dial feature for Microsoft Outlook

The Quick-Dial feature allows you to call contacts in Microsoft Outlook directly through Avaya IP Agent.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Enabling the Quick-Dial feature](#) on page 100
- [Using the Quick-Dial feature](#) on page 101

Enabling the Quick-Dial feature

The Quick Dial feature is automatically installed with Avaya IP Agent. Before you can use Avaya IP Agent to call Outlook contacts, you must set the **Dialing Options** in Outlook to use the Avaya component.

To enable Avaya IP Agent to call Outlook contacts, do the following steps:

1. Open Microsoft Outlook.
2. Open the **Contacts** area of Microsoft Outlook.
3. On the menu bar, select **Actions > Call Contact > New Call**.

Microsoft Outlook displays the **New Call** dialog box.

Note:

If Dialing Properties (Location) has not yet been assigned, you are prompted to provide this information before proceeding to the next step. See [Handling outgoing calls](#) on page 147 for Dialing Properties information.

4. Select the **Dialing Options** button.

Microsoft Outlook displays the **Dialing Options** dialog box.

5. In the **Connect using line** drop-down list box, select one of the following options:

- For a Callmaster VI configuration, select **DEFINITY/Line**.
- For all other configurations except Instant Messaging Only, select **Avaya IP/Line**.
- For Instant Messaging Only, an informational dialog appears with this message: "One of the components of the telephone device driver is missing. Use Windows Control Panel to set up the device driver properly."

6. Select the **OK** button.

The **Dialing Options** dialog box is closed.

7. In the **New Call** dialog box, select the **Close** button.

Microsoft Outlook will now route all future contact calls through Avaya IP Agent.

Using the Quick-Dial feature

After you have enabled the Quick-Dial feature to use Avaya IP Agent, you can now call contacts directly from Microsoft Outlook.

To call a contact in Microsoft Outlook, do the following steps:

1. Open Microsoft Outlook.
2. Open the **Contacts** area of Microsoft Outlook.
3. Create or find a contact that you want to call.

The contact must have a defined telephone number.

4. Right-click the contact entry and select **Call** from the resulting popup menu.

Microsoft Outlook displays a **New Call** dialog box with the contact name and telephone number.

5. Select the **Start Call** button.

Avaya IP Agent begins the telephone call to the selected contact and a Call Information Panel is displayed in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

Note:

You can select the **End Call** button when you are finished.

Configuring the Emergency Call Handling Service

The Emergency Call Handling Service (E911) allows IP Endpoints to use numbers that connect to emergency services, such as 911 in the United States. When used, this feature reaches only the emergency service in the Public Safety Answering Point area where the Avaya communication server is located.



WARNING:

Because IP Endpoints do not dial to and connect with local emergency services when dialing from remote locations, **agents or extensions in remote locations should not use this feature for emergencies.**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible or liable for any damages resulting from misplaced emergency calls made from an Avaya endpoint. Your use of this product indicates that you have read this advisory and agree to use an alternative telephone to dial all emergency calls from remote locations.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Administering the Avaya communication server for Emergency Call Handling](#) on page 102
- [Administering Avaya IP Agent for Emergency Call Handling](#) on page 102

Note:

For Avaya Telephone-DCP and Callmaster VI configurations, this feature is not configured through Avaya IP Agent. If an emergency call is dialed on a telephone while this configuration is in use, the emergency call is treated normally by the Avaya communication server.

Note:

This feature is not available for IP Telephone configurations.

Administering the Avaya communication server for Emergency Call Handling

See the documentation for your Avaya communication server for information on configuring the Emergency Call Handling feature.

Administering Avaya IP Agent for Emergency Call Handling

This section provides the procedure for configuring Avaya IP Agent to use the Emergency Call Handling Service.

Before you begin

The Avaya communication server to which you are connecting must have each extension properly configured for the Emergency Call Handling Service before this feature can be used through Avaya IP Agent.

Steps

To configure the Emergency Call Handling Service in Avaya IP Agent:

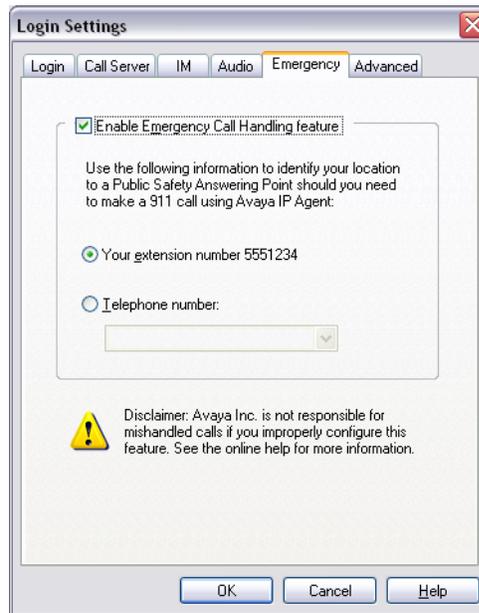
1. Start Avaya IP Agent.

Windows displays Avaya IP Agent and the **Login** window.

2. In the **Login** window, select the **Settings** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Settings** dialog box.

3. Select the **Emergency** tab.



4. Place a check mark in the **Enable emergency call handling feature** check box.
5. Select the location that will be sent through the Avaya communication server for calls placed to emergency services:
 - **Your extension number XXXXXXXX** - Select this option button if you want your extension number to be sent to emergency personnel. This selection is best used for those stations within the contact center.
 - **Telephone number** - Select this option button if you want a telephone number other than your extension sent to emergency services. Specify the telephone number to

send in the provided field. For example, enter a number corresponding to a Digital Communications Protocol (DCP) telephone in your vicinity that has a fixed, known location so that emergency personnel know where to respond. If you are unsure of a number to enter, see your system administrator.

6. Select the **OK** button.
7. In the **Login** dialog box, select the **Login** button.
Any calls to emergency services will show the selected telephone number.

Configuring Avaya IP Agent for VPN configurations

If you are using a VPN, you may need to specify a local IP address for proper network communication. Set this address through the **Login Settings** dialog box.

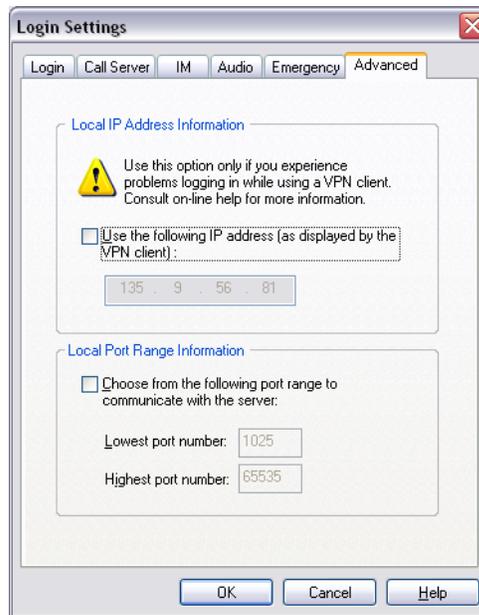
Steps

To set the local IP address for a VPN configuration:

1. Start Avaya IP Agent.
Windows displays Avaya IP Agent and the **Login** window.
2. In the **Login** window, select the **Settings** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Settings** dialog box.

3. Select the **Advanced** tab.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Advanced** tab panel:



4. Place a check mark in the **Use the following IP address (as displayed by the VPN client)** check box.

Avaya IP Agent enables the associated IP address field.

5. In the IP address field, enter the local IP address to be used by the VPN client.
6. Select the **OK** button.

All subsequent login attempts to the Avaya communication server will cause this dialog box to be displayed.

Installing the Quality of Service Packet Scheduler

Quality of Service (QoS) can help improve voice transmission on your network and personal computer when using Voice-over-IP. However, before you can use Quality of Service, you must install the QoS Packet Scheduler.

Note:

The QoS Packet Scheduler for Windows is automatically installed when Avaya IP Agent is installed, but can be excluded from the installation via the Custom Setup option in the installation program.

Before you begin

You should read and understand the following items before installing the Quality of Service Packet Scheduler:

- Some VPN client applications have conflicts with the Packet Scheduler. If your VPN exhibits problems, remove the QoS Packet Scheduler from your personal computer.
- If you are using QoS in conjunction with a firewall, the range of ports for QoS set up on the Avaya communication server must overlap the range of firewall ports specified in Avaya IP Agent by 100 ports. If these ranges do not overlap by 100 ports, QoS is not used by Avaya iClarity IP Audio and transmissions are done within the range of firewall ports.
- Many Avaya IP telephones are equipped with internal QoS. For information about QoS in IP telephones, see the documentation for your specific telephone.

Configuring Alternate Gatekeeper on Avaya communication servers

Use the Alternate Gatekeeper feature when an IP Endpoint registers with an Avaya communication server. When Avaya IP Agent registers with an Avaya communication server, a C-LAN circuit pack IP address is sent to the IP Endpoint. If registration is successful, the Avaya communication server sends back the IP addresses of all C-LAN circuit packs defined in the same network region. Avaya IP Agent can use these addresses as alternatives if call signaling on the original C-LAN circuit pack fails.



Tip:

You can better control the usage and workload of C-LAN circuit packs by creating network regions.

Alternate Gatekeeper configuration

For information on defining Alternate Gatekeeper addresses, refer to your Avaya communication server documentation.

Configuring server load balancing across gatekeepers

Load balancing for an Avaya communication server refers to the ability of distributing IP Endpoint traffic across all C-LAN circuit packs that are defined within the same network region.

Load Balancing configuration

Load balancing is achieved by defining all of the IP addresses of the C-LAN circuit packs to be part of a network region on an Avaya communication server. After this has been completed, IP Endpoints registering with the Avaya communication server will be automatically assigned to the different C-LAN circuit packs in sequential order. This helps distribute IP Endpoints evenly amongst the C-LAN circuit packs.

**Important:**

It is important that you use the network region feature to control which C-LAN circuit packs are available when one pack loses connectivity. Without proper region assignments for your C-LAN circuit packs, Avaya IP Agent could attempt to connect to a C-LAN circuit pack that has not been properly configured or is not intended for use with Avaya IP Agent.

For more information on defining C-LAN circuit packs within a network region, refer to the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

Load Balancing documentation

For installation procedures and configuration information for the C-LAN and IP Media Processor circuit packs, see *Administration for Network Connectivity* for your Communication Manager, MultiVantage, or DEFINITY system.

Chapter 5: Starting and Stopping Avaya IP Agent

This chapter explains how to begin using Avaya IP Agent. It contains the following sections:

- [Starting Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 109
- [Initializing IP Endpoint configurations](#) on page 110
- [Initializing Callmaster VI configurations](#) on page 119
- [Registering with the Avaya communication server](#) on page 120
- [Logging in as an agent \(EAS\)](#) on page 123
- [Logging in as an agent \(non-EAS\)](#) on page 125
- [Logging out of Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 126
- [Exiting Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 127
- [Using alternate user interfaces](#) on page 127

Starting Avaya IP Agent

This section provides the procedure for starting the Avaya IP Agent application.

Steps for starting Avaya IP Agent

To start Avaya IP Agent:

1. Select the **Start** button from the Windows task bar.
2. Do the following step that is appropriate for your situation:
 - If you upgraded a previous version of Avaya IP Agent, select **Programs > Avaya IP Agent**.
 - If you are using a new installation of Avaya IP Agent, select **Programs > Avaya**.
3. Select **Avaya IP Agent - <language>**.

The Avaya IP Agent window is displayed. Although Avaya IP Agent is now running, your extension is not yet registered with the Avaya communication server.

4. If this is the first time that Avaya IP Agent is run, you must follow the procedure for your type of configuration:
 - For IP Endpoint configurations, go to [Initializing IP Endpoint configurations](#) on page 110.
 - For Callmaster VI configurations, go to [Initializing Callmaster VI configurations](#) on page 119.

Initializing IP Endpoint configurations

If you have performed a new installation of Avaya IP Agent for an IP Endpoint configuration, the **Configuration Wizard** is displayed when you first start Avaya IP Agent. The **Configuration Wizard** prompts you to enter the necessary configuration information for registering with an Avaya communication server and for Voice-over-IP audio performance.

Steps for using the Configuration Wizard

To configure your installation of Avaya IP Agent to register with an Avaya communication server:

1. Start Avaya IP Agent.

Avaya IP Agent starts the **Configuration Wizard** automatically.
2. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.
3. Select the appropriate option:
 - **Log into Avaya call server** - Select this option for Road Warrior, Telecommuter, and Avaya Telephone configurations.

If you are using an Avaya Telephone configuration, place a check mark in the **Control an Avaya telephone** check box.
 - **Log into Avaya IP Telephone** - Select this option for IP Telephone configurations. Do not select this option if you will be using the Avaya Telephone-IP configuration.

- Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

Road Warrior / Telecommuter /
Avaya Telephone configurations



IP Telephone configuration



- Enter the necessary information in the following fields:

- **Extension** - The extension number of the station that will be used with Avaya IP Agent.
- **Password** - The numeric password associated with the specified extension.
- **Remember password for next login session** - Place a check mark in this check box if you do not want to enter your password each time you register with the Avaya communication server. If you are concerned with the possibility of unauthorized persons assuming this identity, leave this check box blank.
- **IP Address** - Enter the IP address of the IP telephone that will be used with Avaya IP Agent. If you have entered an extension number, select the **Discover** button to automatically populate the IP address of the IP telephone.

- Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

- In the **Primary Server Address** field, enter the domain name or IP address of the Avaya communication server C-LAN circuit pack that will be used for connections.
- In the **Alternative Server Addresses** field, you have the option of defining other C-LAN circuit pack addresses that will be used should the primary address fail. This field is optional.



Tip:

The alternative server addresses should reside in the same network region as the primary server address. For more information on defining network regions, see the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

9. Select the **Next** button.

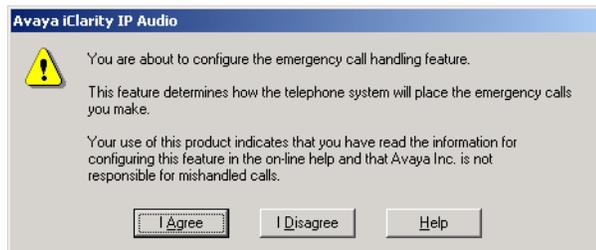
Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

10. Select the pre-defined **Dialing Location** from the drop-down list. This selection will control certain telephony properties such as area code, outside line access, and so forth.

Selecting the **Properties** button will display the configuration for the selected dialing location.

11. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays a warning message regarding the Emergency Call Handling feature.



Note:

For the IP Telephone configuration, the Emergency Call Handling window is not displayed. If you are using the IP Telephone configuration, proceed to Step 17.

12. Read the text of this warning completely and select the **I Agree** button if you understand and agree to the conditions stated in this message.

If you select the **I Disagree** button, the **Configuration Wizard** will exit.

After you select **I Agree**, Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.



13. If you want to enable this feature, place a check mark in the **Enable Emergency Call Handling feature** check box.
14. If you enabled the Emergency Call Handling feature, select the location that will be sent through the Avaya communication server for calls placed to emergency services:



WARNING:

Because IP Endpoints do not dial to and connect with local emergency services when dialing from remote locations, **agents or extensions in remote locations should not use this feature for emergencies.**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible or liable for any damages resulting from misplaced emergency calls made from an Avaya endpoint. Your use of this product indicates that you have read this advisory and agree to use an alternative telephone to dial all emergency calls from remote locations.

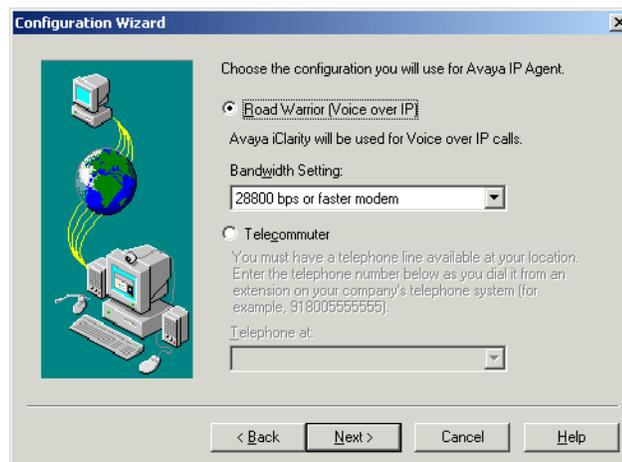
- **Your extension number XXXXXXX** - Select this option button if you want your extension number to be sent to emergency personnel. This selection is best used for those stations within the contact center.
- **Telephone number** - Select this option button if you want a telephone number other than your extension sent to emergency services. Specify the telephone number to send in the provided field.

This selection must be compatible with the station definition on the Avaya communication server in the **IP Emergency Calls** field. Failure to use the same setting as the Avaya communication server will result in login failure for this extension.

15. Select the **Next** button.

For Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations, Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

This window is not displayed for Avaya Telephone-DCP configurations. If you are using the Avaya Telephone-DCP configuration, proceed to step 17.



16. Select the type of IP Endpoint configuration that will be used for this installation of Avaya IP Agent.

If you select the **Road Warrior (Voice over IP)** option, you will also need to specify the network throughput available in the **Bandwidth Setting** field. Select the **Help** button for specific information about the different bandwidth settings.

! Important:

The quality of the audio in a Road Warrior configuration is dependent on many factors. See [Voice-over-IP considerations](#) on page 28 for specific information.

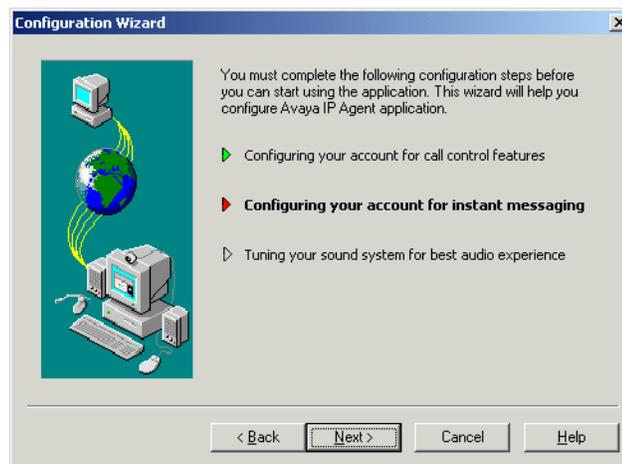
If you select the **Telecommuter** option, you must specify the telephone or extension number that will be used to make and receive calls with Avaya IP Agent.

Note:

For Road Warrior configurations, two lights are displayed in the status bar of the main window. These lights indicate the status of the network connection. If these lights turn red, your network is having connectivity problems or you have chosen a bandwidth that cannot be supported by your network connection.

17. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.



You have completed the process for specifying the settings that will be used to connect and function with the Avaya communication server. If you selected to install the Instant Messaging feature of Avaya IP Agent, you will configure the settings to connect to the SIP Enablement Services. If you did not install the Instant Messaging feature, go to step 27.

18. To configure instant messaging settings, select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

19. Select the appropriate option for configuring the Instant Messaging feature:

- **Yes, continue with configuration** - Select this option if you want to configure the instant messaging settings at this time.
 - **No, I will configure the instant messaging feature later** - Select this option if you want to configure the instant messaging settings later through **Program Options**.
 - **I do not want to use Avaya IP Agent instant messaging feature** - Select this option if you do not want to use instant messaging. You will be able to enable the Instant Messaging feature later through **Program Options**.
20. After you have made your selection for instant messaging configuration, select the **Next** button.

If you selected to configure the Instant Messaging feature, you are presented with a window allowing entry of the SIP Enablement Services user name and password.

If you selected to postpone or bypass configuration of the Instant Messaging feature, go to step 26.

21. In the **User Name** field, enter the SIP Enablement Services user ID to use for instant messaging.

 **Important:**

The user name is case-sensitive. If a user has been defined as *agent001@mycompany.com*, you must enter the name in Avaya IP Agent exactly as it was on the SIP Enablement Services. For example, if you entered *Agent001@mycompany.com*, this would not be a match.

22. In the Password field, enter the password that corresponds to the user name that you entered in step 21.
23. If you want Avaya IP Agent to retain your instant messaging password each time it is started, place a check mark in the **Remember password for next login session** check box.
24. Select the **Next** button.
25. In the **Server Address** field, enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP Enablement Services.

For example, the address could be an IP address such as 123.123.123.123 or a domain name such as ses.mycompany.com.

26. Select the **Next** button.

The Configuration Wizard displays a window indicating that you will now configure the audio properties of Avaya IP Agent.

Note:

You must complete this section before you will be allowed to register with the Avaya communication server.

27. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard. This window varies based on the configuration type.

Road Warrior (VoIP)

Telecommuter

Telecommuter / Road Warrior with multiple sound devices



28. In the **Select a playback device** field, select the appropriate device that Avaya IP Agent should use for audio output.
29. If you are setting a Road Warrior configuration, select the appropriate device on your personal computer in the **Select a recording device** list. For other configurations, this drop-down list box is not displayed and you can continue to the next step.
30. If your personal computer contains multiple sound devices and you have specified the Telecommuter configuration, you can choose to have Avaya IP Agent play ringing sounds through another sound device. To do so, place a check mark in the **Enable a secondary ring device** check box. Then, select the appropriate sound device from the **Select a secondary playback device** drop-down list box.
31. If you want to use agent greetings in the Telecommuter or Avaya Telephone configurations, place a check mark in the **Play greetings via Avaya Switcher II** check box.

Important:

The Avaya Switcher II connects directly to both your telephone and personal computer. If you are not using an Avaya Switcher II, you will not be able to properly record and use agent greetings in Telecommuter and Avaya Telephone configurations.

For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:

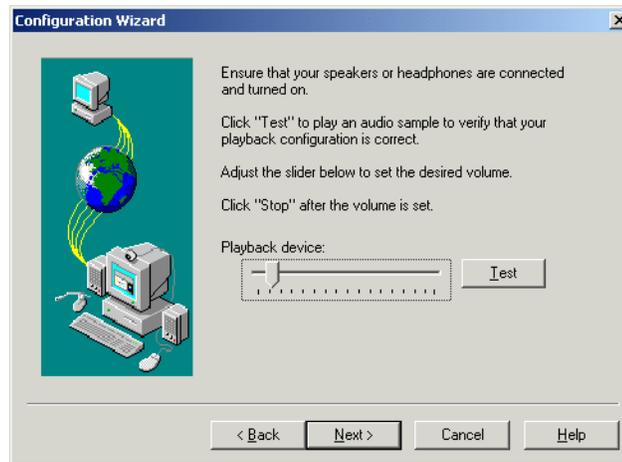
http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf

32. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard. If you are setting a Telecommuter or Avaya Telephone configuration, go to step 35.

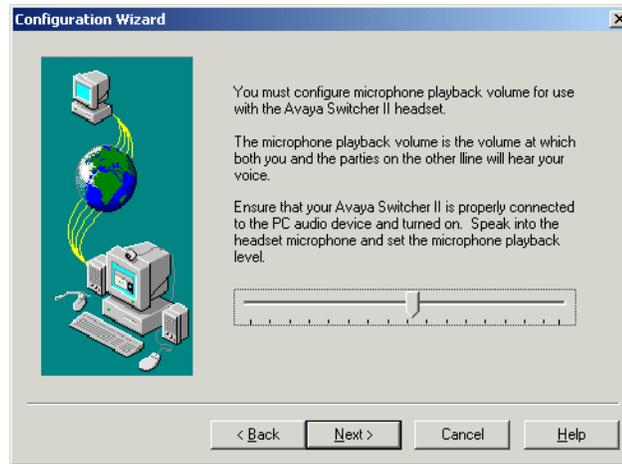
33. If you are setting a Road Warrior configuration, select the device to use for transmitting and receiving audio:

- **Headset or Handset** - Select this option if you will be using a headset (Universal Serial Bus or attached to the personal computer sound card) or a special handset that connects to your personal computer.
 - **PC Microphone and PC Speakers** - Select this option if you will be using a microphone and speaker system attached to your personal computer.
 - **Half-Duplex Sound Device** - Select this option if it is available because Avaya iClarity IP Audio will adjust its performance for this type of sound device. Avaya recommends that full-duplex sound devices be used for Voice-over-IP communications.
34. Select the **Next** button.
- Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.



35. Follow the instructions listed in this window to set the optimal volume level for the audio output of your personal computer sound device.
36. After you have set the volume level, select the **Next** button.

37. If you selected the Avaya Switcher II feature, Avaya IP Agent displays a window for setting the microphone playback volume of this unit. If you did not enable this feature, proceed to step 42.



38. After you have set the microphone playback volume, select the **Next** button. Avaya IP Agent displays the next window of the Configuration Wizard.

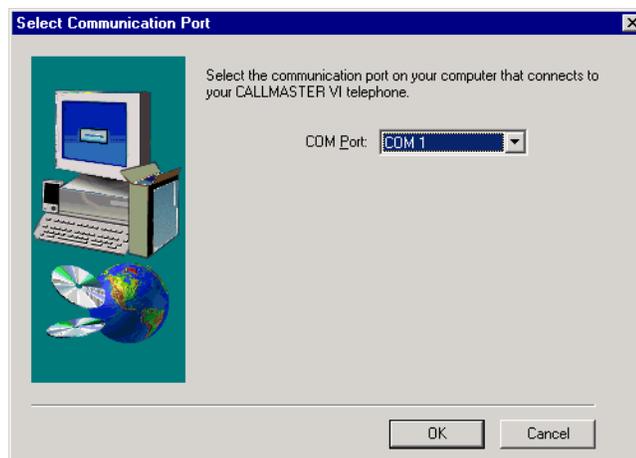


39. If you are administering a Road Warrior configuration, set the microphone recording level. If you want Avaya iClarity IP Audio to automatically adjust the recording levels, select the top option. If you want to use a steady and consistent level of volume for recording, select the bottom option. You must set the initial level by moving the slider bar so that when you speak into your microphone, you can see green boxes in the **Audio meter**. These boxes should not exceed the boundaries marked by the caret characters.

40. Select the **Next** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays a test window.
41. Select the **Test** button to set the level of background noise in your environment.
42. Select the **Next** button.
Avaya IP agent displays the last window of the Configuration Wizard.
43. If you do not need to go back and readjust your audio settings, select the **Finish** button to complete the Configuration Wizard.

Initializing Callmaster VI configurations

If you have completed a new installation of Avaya IP Agent for a Callmaster VI configuration (only available on Windows XP), the **Select Communication Port** window is displayed when you first start Avaya IP Agent.



In the drop-down list box, select the communications (COM) port that is used to connect the personal computer to the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone. When you have specified the COM port, select the **OK** button to continue.

Registering with the Avaya communication server

Before you can use Avaya IP Agent, you must register Avaya IP Agent with the Avaya communication server and register your extension through the **Login** window. Once you are registered with the Avaya communication server, you can make yourself available for ACD calls by performing an agent login.



Important:

Avaya Callmaster VI configurations do not register with the Avaya communication server as described in this section. Registration is automatic through the Avaya Callmaster VI telephone. If you are using an Avaya Callmaster VI configuration, proceed to [Logging in as an agent \(EAS\)](#) on page 123.

This section provides the procedure for registering with an Avaya communication server and registering with a SIP Enablement Services for the Instant Messaging feature. This must be done so that you can use Avaya IP Agent for placing and answering calls in an IP Endpoint configuration and for using the Instant Messaging feature.

Note:

If you use IP Agent in the Instant Messaging Only configuration, you register with SIP Enablement Services only.

Before you begin

If you attempt to log in to an Avaya communication server that is not a supported DEFINITY, MultiVantage, or Communication Manager system, Avaya IP Agent displays an **Invalid Station Type** error message. For a list of supported systems, see [Avaya communication server](#) on page 64.

Setting default registration information

The **Settings** button on the **Login** window can be used to configure more advanced features that are used with Avaya IP Agent and the Avaya communication server. For more information on these settings, see [Login Settings dialog box](#) on page 240.

Steps for registering with a server

To register with the Avaya communication server:

1. When you start Avaya IP Agent, the **Login** window is displayed. If this window is not displayed, select **File > Station Login** from the Avaya IP Agent main window.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Login** window for your IP Endpoint configuration.
2. In the **Extension** field, enter your extension, which has been administered for Avaya IP Agent on the Avaya communication server.
3. In the **Password** field, enter the numeric password for the specified extension.
4. In the **Configuration** field, select the appropriate IP Endpoint configuration.
5. Do one of the following steps based on your IP Endpoint configuration:

Telecommuter / Road Warrior / Avaya Telephone	IP Telephone	Instant Messaging Only
In the Call Server Address field, enter the IP Address or name of the Avaya communication server.	In the Telephone IP Address field, enter the IP address of your IP telephone. Alternatively, select the Discover button to query the Avaya communication server for the IP address of the specified extension.	In the IM Server Address field, ensure that the IP address or domain name of the SIP Enablement Services is entered correctly.

6. Depending on the type of IP Endpoint configuration you are using, ensure that the correct information is specified in the appropriate field:
 - **Telephone At** (Telecommuter) - This is the telephone or extension number that will receive incoming calls. This number cannot be the same as the number entered in the **Extension** field. The Avaya communication server administrator will have created a new extension to support voice communication.
 - **Bandwidth Setting** (Road Warrior) - Select a bandwidth that is available through the network connection for this personal computer.
 - **Dialing Location** - Select the entry that contains the appropriate telephony properties for your current location.
7. If you do not want to enter your password each time you register with the Avaya communication server, place a check mark in the **Remember password for next login session** check box. If you are concerned with the possibility of unauthorized persons registering as this extension, leave this check box blank.

8. If you want to automatically register with the Avaya communication server and the SIP Enablement Services when Avaya IP Agent is started at a later time, enable the **Automatically log in if possible when application restarts** check box. You must have successfully registered with the Avaya communication server at least once in the past to use this option.
9. To log in to the SIP Enablement Services for instant messaging, place a check mark in the **Log into Avaya instant messaging server** check box.

Note:

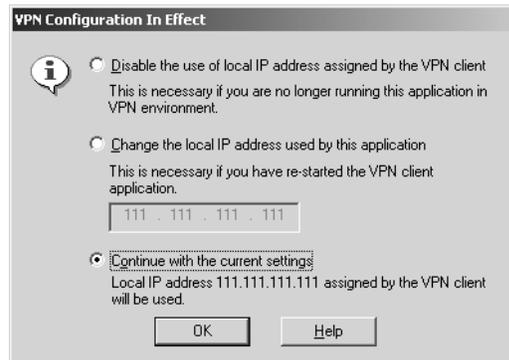
You cannot log in to instant messaging after registering with the Avaya communication server. Instant messaging login is always done at the same time as when you register with the Avaya communication server.

10. Select the **Login** button. When you successfully register with the Avaya communication server, the controls in the Avaya IP Agent main window are enabled.
11. If you are using the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration, do the appropriate action shown in the following table:

Telecommuter	IP Telephone
Avaya IP Agent displays the Verify Telephone Number dialog box upon successful registration with the Avaya communication server. When you first start using Avaya IP Agent, it is important that you make some test calls to verify that you have set up your connection properly.	Press # on the IP telephone key pad to allow Avaya IP Agent to log in to the IP telephone.

Registering while using a VPN

If the VPN compatibility feature of Avaya IP Agent has been enabled through the **Login Settings** dialog box, the **VPN Configuration In Effect** dialog box is displayed during all subsequent login attempts to the Avaya communication server:



This dialog box contains the following options:

- **Disable the user of local IP address assigned by the VPN client** - Select this option to deactivate the VPN feature for this and all subsequent login attempts. To re-enable this option, you must follow the steps under [Configuring Avaya IP Agent for VPN configurations](#) on page 104.
- **Change the local IP address used by this application** - With this option, the VPN feature remains active. However, you can change the IP address that will be used by the VPN client.
- **Continue with the current settings** - Select this option to retain the current IP address settings for the VPN client and continue the login process.

When you have selected the appropriate option, press the **OK** button to continue the login process.

Logging in as an agent (EAS)

After registering with the Avaya communication server, you can, as an extension, receive calls through Avaya IP Agent. However, to receive calls from a skill, you need to log in as an agent of that skill. This section provides the procedure for logging in to Avaya IP Agent as an agent. This procedure is for logging in to Avaya communication servers that use the Expert Agent Selection (EAS) feature.

Steps for logging in (EAS)

To log in to Avaya IP Agent as a member of an ACD skill:

1. In the Avaya IP Agent window, select the **Login** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Login** dialog box.



2. In the **Agent Login** dialog box, enter your agent number and password in the appropriate fields.
3. Select the **Login** button.

If you are using the Telecommuter, Avaya Telephone, or IP Telephone configuration, the extension specified in the **Login** window will ring. For Road Warrior (VoIP) and Avaya Callmaster VI configurations, a line appearance will be created.

Note:

If you do not answer your telephone immediately or if you entered the wrong number for the voice connection, Avaya IP Agent displays an error message. Acknowledge the error message by selecting the **OK** button and then repeat the login procedure.

4. Answer the telephone.

You will hear a confirmation tone, the buttons on the agent toolbar are enabled, and you will be automatically put in the AUX-work mode.

5. To leave the AUX-work mode, select either the **Auto-In** or **Manual-In** button.

For more information about **Auto-In** and **Manual-In** work modes, see [Selecting an agent work mode](#) on page 131.

You are now ready to begin receiving and making calls.

Logging in as an agent (non-EAS)

After registering with the Avaya communication server, you can, as an extension, receive calls through Avaya IP Agent. However, to receive calls from a split, you need to log in as an agent of that split. This section provides the procedure for logging in to splits through Avaya IP Agent. This procedure is for logging in to Avaya communication servers that do not have the Expert Agent Selection (EAS) feature.

Before you begin

In order for an agent to be able to log in to a split, Avaya IP Agent must be configured to support a non-EAS Avaya communication server. To change the Avaya IP Agent configuration:

1. Select **Tools > Program Options**.
2. From the **Program Options** window, select the **ACD Agent** item from the list box.
3. Remove the check mark from the **Configure program for EAS agent support** check box.
4. Ensure that a check mark is present in the **Prompt for agent ID and password during agent login** check box.

Note:

If this feature is not enabled, you must enter your agent ID and password through the telephone key pad.

5. Select the **OK** button.
6. Close Avaya IP Agent by selecting **File > Exit** from the main window.
7. Restart Avaya IP Agent.

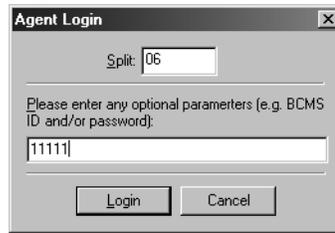
Steps for logging in (non-EAS)

To log in to Avaya IP Agent as a member of an ACD split:

1. In the Avaya IP Agent window, locate the Agent toolbar. This toolbar lists the splits assigned to this station.
If this toolbar is not visible, select **View > Toolbars > Agent**.
2. On the Agent toolbar, select the split you want to log into.
Avaya IP Agent displays a menu with a **Login** option.

3. Select the **Login** option.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Login** dialog box.



4. If your extension requires a password, enter the password for this split.

If you are logging in to a split that consists of only one or two digits, you may be required to place one or more zeros in front of the split number. This is dependent on the configuration of your Avaya communication server. See the documentation for your Avaya communication server.

5. Select the **Login** button.
6. Select the split from the Agent toolbar again.
7. Select the appropriate work mode from the resulting menu.
8. For each split you want to log in to, repeat this procedure.

An agent can log in to a total of four splits.

Logging out of Avaya IP Agent

This section provides the procedure for logging out of Avaya IP Agent as an agent.

Steps

To log out of Avaya IP Agent:

1. Select the **Logout** button on the agent toolbar, or select **Agent > Agent Logout** from the menu bar.

If the Avaya communication server has been configured to require logout reason codes, Avaya IP Agent displays a prompt in the status bar for entry of the reason code.

2. Enter your logout reason code through the keyboard or the **Dial Pad**.

Exiting Avaya IP Agent

This section provides the procedure for exiting the Avaya IP Agent application.

Steps

To exit Avaya IP Agent and log out of the Avaya communication server:

1. After you have logged out as an agent, select **File > Exit** from the main window.

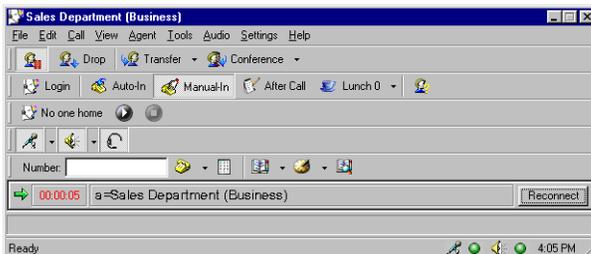
The Avaya IP Agent main window closes and your extension is logged out of the Avaya communication server.

Using alternate user interfaces

This section provides information and procedures for the alternate user interfaces that are available in Avaya IP Agent.

In many contact center environments, agents use many different applications simultaneously. This can lead to overlapped application windows on the Windows desktop. This can cause difficulties in accessing or using the necessary application windows quickly and efficiently. To help overcome this problem, Avaya IP Agent provides three alternate user interfaces that use much less space on the Windows desktop than the default main window. The following figure compares interface size:

Default main window



Alternate user interface example



Note:

The procedures in this document are written for the default main window. You will not be able to exactly follow these procedures when you are using an alternate user interface. However, the Program Menu button on the right side of the interface allows you to access the most commonly used features in Avaya IP Agent. Also, the shortcut key combinations for Avaya IP Agent do not function while you use an alternate user interface.

AutoAnswer interface



This interface uses the least amount of space, and is intended for agents using the **Auto-In** and **Auto-answer** features. Call-handling buttons, such as **Transfer**, **Hold**, and **Release** are present. Buttons for agent work modes and Avaya IP Agent features are not available in this interface.

Mini interface



This interface is slightly wider than the AutoAnswer interface and is intended for the contact center agent who determines the necessary work mode, such as AUX (Auxiliary Work) and ACW (After-Call Work). In addition to the call-handling buttons, this interface also contains buttons for any agent work modes assigned to this extension.

Titlebar interface



When an agent is on a call, this interface is the largest of the alternate interfaces. It includes call-handling buttons, agent work modes buttons, and buttons used to access other Avaya IP Agent features, such as the **Contact Directory** and **Contact History** window.

Selecting an alternate interface

This section provides the steps for selecting one of the three alternate user interfaces available with Avaya IP Agent.

Steps

To select an alternate user interface.

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **View > Alternate Interfaces**.
2. From the branching menu, select the interface that you want to use:
 - **AutoAnswer**
 - **Mini Interface**
 - **Titlebar**

Avaya IP Agent displays the selected interface.

Accessing features

To access Avaya IP Agent features that are not represented by a button, click the **Program Menu** button on the far right side of the interface. A menu containing login and logout options, work modes, online help items, and features is displayed.



Returning to the main interface

To return to the Avaya IP Agent main window from an alternate user interface, click the Maximize button next to **Program Menu** button on the right side of the interface.



Returning to a previously-used alternate user interface

If you have previously selected an alternate user interface and you have returned to the Avaya IP Agent main window, you can quickly change back to the previously-used alternate user interface by using the **Ctrl+u** key combination.

This key combination is helpful when you restart your personal computer and then start Avaya IP Agent, which always opens with the main window as the default view.

Removing alternate user interfaces

If you do not want these interfaces available for use, remove all files located in the following directory:

```
<install-directory>\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Skins
```

If you want only one interface available to agents, leave that file in the \Skins directory and delete the other files.

Note:

Avaya IP Agent cannot recreate these files once they have been deleted.

Renaming alternate user interfaces

If you want to change the name of an alternate user interface, rename the necessary file in the following directory:

```
<install-directory>\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Skins
```

Note:

Because the names of these menu items are derived from actual filenames, these items will appear in English for international versions of Avaya IP Agent. To cause these menu items to appear in a specific language other than English, you must use a language-specific version of Windows and then rename the files as needed.

Chapter 6: Avaya IP Agent basic operations

This chapter contains information on the basic operations of Avaya IP Agent.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Selecting an agent work mode](#) on page 131
- [Handling incoming calls](#) on page 133
- [Transferring a call](#) on page 139
- [Conferencing calls](#) on page 142
- [Handling outgoing calls](#) on page 147
- [Using instant messaging](#) on page 160
- [Using the Web Dialer in Internet Explorer](#) on page 167

Selecting an agent work mode

During the course of placing calls, receiving calls, and performing work associated with those calls, work modes are used to indicate the availability of the agent or the work being performed.

Definitions of agent work modes

Auto-In and Manual-In

The **Auto-In** and **Manual-In** buttons are used to place an agent in the AVAIL (Available) work mode so that the agent can receive calls.

If an agent is in **Auto-In** mode and completes a call, the agent is automatically available to receive another call, or can be placed in After-Call Work (ACW) mode for an administered length of time. When the timed ACW interval expires, the agent is automatically returned to available status. If the agent tries to change agent modes while active on a call, the change is not made until the agent disconnects from the call.

If the agent is in **Manual-In** mode and completes a call, the agent is automatically placed in After-Call Work (ACW) mode. To become available to receive another ACD call, the agent must manually select the **Auto-In** or **Manual-In** mode. If the agent tries to change agent modes while not on an active call, the change takes place immediately.

ACW (After-Call Work)

Agents use this work mode to indicate that tasks related to the previous call are being performed. This button is not usually used in conjunction with the **Auto-In** feature because agents with the **Auto-In** feature are made available for a new call when the current call is completed.

This work mode can be selected while the agent is on an active call. The change will not occur until the current call is finished and released. This work mode may not function correctly if the agent uses it while in **Auto-In** mode.

AUX (Auxiliary Work)

Agents use this work mode to indicate that they cannot receive calls. Usually, this indicates that the agent is not in the proximity of the telephone because of meals, approved periods of inactivity, meetings, training, and so forth.

It is possible for multiple **Auxiliary Work** modes to be assigned to an extension as each can possess a different reason code to indicate the various situations that an agent cannot receive calls.

This work mode can be selected while the agent is on an active call. The change will not occur until the current call is finished and released.

Changing work modes

The agent work modes can be changed through the following methods:

- Using shortcut keys - See [Shortcut keys](#) on page 263.
- Selecting the associated work mode button on the agent toolbar - See [Agent toolbar](#) on page 217.
- Selecting the work mode from the Avaya IP Agent System Tray icon - See [System Tray icon](#) on page 221.
- Selecting the work mode from the **Agent** menu in the main window - See [Agent menu](#) on page 211.

Note:

When a work mode is active, the timer, which is displayed in the Call Information Panel, displays the total time that the agent has been in the selected work mode. To disable this timer, see [How to remove the call timer](#) on page 283.

Handling incoming calls

This section describes those functions that you will be using every day when you receive an incoming call at your station, including answering a call and holding a call.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Answering a call](#) on page 133
- [Holding a call](#) on page 136
- [Releasing a call](#) on page 137
- [Dropping a call](#) on page 138

Answering a call

Answering a call depends on how the Avaya communication server and the network are administered. Each contact center environment is different, which can affect the way agents answer calls. Avaya suggests that each contact center evaluate its configuration and instruct agents on the best way to answer calls with Avaya IP Agent. There are too many possible Avaya IP Agent configurations to list them in this document. The following are some suggested procedures on answering calls for different configurations.

Telecommuter

Configuration settings for Telecommuter

The following list provides the options to set for this configuration:

- Agent Administration for auto-answer is set to `station` or `none`.
- Station Administration for auto-answer is set to `none`.
- Station Administration has service link set to `as-needed`.
- Each time a call is received, the analog or DCP telephone that provides the voice path will ring. The personal computer will also emit a ringing sound if you have configured Avaya IP Agent to do so.
- Your Central Office (CO) must have the Answer Supervision feature. Contact your telecommunication provider for more information.

Steps for answering Telecommuter calls

To answer a call for this configuration:

1. The agent should wait for the telephone to ring and then answer it. Answering of the telephone will automatically be detected through Avaya IP Agent.

2. After the call is completed and the calling party disconnects from the call, or after the agent selects **Release** for that call, the agent should hang up the telephone if no more calls are ringing on the Avaya IP Agent screen.
3. If there is another incoming call indicated on the screen, the agent should not hang up the telephone, but select the **Answer** button for the new call appearance on the Avaya IP Agent screen. The agent is then connected to the new call. The previous call is placed on hold.

Note:

If an incoming call is displayed in the Avaya IP Agent main window before the telephone rings, the agent must wait for the telephone set to ring before answering.

Telecommuter (Auto-Answer)

Configuration settings for Telecommuter (Auto-Answer)

The following list provides the options to set for this configuration:

- Agent Administration for auto-answer is set to `station`, `ACD`, or `all`.
- Station Administration for auto-answer is set to `ACD` or `all`.
- Station Administration has the service link set to `permanent`.
- During the event of agent login, the telephone will ring to deliver the login confirmation tone.

Steps for answering Telecommuter (Auto-Answer) calls

To answer a call for this configuration:

1. The agent should answer the telephone and do not return it to the on-hook state for the remainder of the shift for that agent.

If the telephone is accidentally cut off or placed on-hook, the Avaya communication server rings the telephone when it has a call to deliver. The agent must answer by picking up the handset.

2. As with any auto-answer telephone, the Avaya communication server will provide a [zip tone](#) (a beep) to signal that a new call has arrived.

Road Warrior and Callmaster VI

Configuration settings for Road Warrior and Callmaster VI

In this configuration, the Auto-Answer feature is not active.

Steps for answering Road Warrior and Callmaster VI calls

To answer a call for this configuration:

1. A caller places a call to the contact center and is routed to a specific extension.
Avaya IP Agent displays a call appearance in a Call Information Panel (CIP) in the main window.
2. The agent should select the **Answer** button on the new CIP.
The call is connected and the agent can begin conversing with the calling party.

Road Warrior and Callmaster VI (Auto-Answer)

Configuration settings for Road Warrior and Callmaster VI (Auto-Answer)

In this configuration, the Auto-Answer feature is enabled.

Steps for answering Road Warrior and Callmaster VI (Auto-Answer) calls

To answer a call for this configuration:

1. A caller places a call to the contact center and is routed to a specific extension.
Avaya IP Agent displays a call appearance in a Call Information Panel (CIP) in the main window.
2. Avaya IP Agent automatically answers the call without any action from the agent, who can then begin conversing with the calling party.

IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone

Configuration settings for IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone

The following list provides the options to set for this configuration:

- Agent Administration for auto-answer is set to `station` or `none`.
- Station Administration for auto-answer is set to `none`.
- Station Administration has service link set to `as-needed`.
- Each time a call is received, the telephone that provides the voice path rings. The personal computer also emits a ringing sound if you have configured Avaya IP Agent to do so.
- Your Central Office (CO) must have the Answer Supervision feature. Contact your telecommunication provider for more information.

Steps for answering IP Telephone and Avaya Telephone calls

To answer a call for this configuration:

1. The agent should wait for the telephone to ring and then answer it. Answering of the telephone will automatically be detected through Avaya IP Agent.
2. After the call is completed and the calling party disconnects from the call, or after the agent selects **Release** for that call, the agent should hang up the telephone if no more calls are ringing on the Avaya IP Agent screen.
3. If there is another incoming call indicated on the screen, the agent should not hang up the telephone, but select the **Answer** button for the new call appearance on the Avaya IP Agent screen. The agent is then connected to the new call. The previous call is placed on hold.

Holding a call

You can put a call on hold by using either the Auto Hold or Manual Hold feature.

When a call is on hold, the text on the button for the associated Call Information Panel (CIP) changes to **Reconnect**.



Using Manual Hold

To perform a Manual Hold, select the **Hold** button on the Phone Button toolbar. For those using the Telecommuter configuration or the IP Telephone configuration, you may also place a call on hold by pressing the **Hold** button on the telephone, if it is so equipped.

Using Auto Hold

The Auto Hold feature does not require pressing a **Hold** button. If you change to a second call appearance, the first call is automatically placed on hold.

Reconnecting to a call on hold

To reconnect to a call that is currently on hold, select the **Reconnect** button on the appropriate CIP. Alternatively, you may re-select the **Hold** button in the main window.

Releasing a call

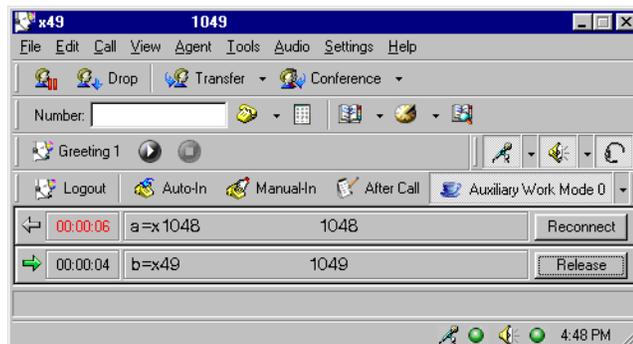
There are different methods for releasing a call. These methods will work only if the Release feature has been administered for your station.

Steps for releasing a call

To release a call:

1. Do one of the following actions:
 - While on an active call, select the **Release** button that is located on the Call Information Panel (CIP). You will not hear a dial tone after you select the **Release** button.
 - Select the **Release** button that is located on the Phone Button toolbar.
 - If you are using an Avaya Callmaster VI, press the **Release** button on the telephone.
 - If you are using Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration, you may hang up the handset.
 - Select the **Release** item in the **Phone Features** window.
2. If you have a call on hold, you must first reconnect to it before you can release the call.

In the example below, you would have to reconnect to extension 1048 before you could release it.



Dropping a call

Use the Drop feature when you want to disconnect from a normal call or drop the last party added to a conference call.

To drop a call, select the **Drop** button located on the Phone Button toolbar. You are then disconnected from the call and hear a dial tone.

Transferring a call

This section describes the following methods of transferring calls:

- [Basic call transfer](#) on page 139
- [Unsupervised call transfer](#) on page 140
- [Enhanced call transfer](#) on page 141

Before you begin

Read and understand the following items before using the procedures described in this topic:

- The **Transfer** button on the Phone Buttons toolbar can be configured for Basic, Unsupervised, or Enhanced transfer. Use the Call Handling screen in the **Program Options** dialog box to set this option. You can also choose a type of transfer that is different from the default, by selecting **Call > Transfer** from the menu bar.
- If all of your call appearances are currently in use, you can transfer a call only to an existing call appearance, not to a new telephone number.
- If you enable the Abort Transfer or Abort Conference feature on your Avaya communication server, Avaya IP Agent cannot transfer or conference between active call appearances.

Basic call transfer

Use the Basic Transfer feature to send an active call to another extension or telephone number. With this type of transfer, you enter the number to receive the transfer through the keyboard and then announce the call to the receiving party.

Steps for a Basic Transfer

To transfer a call using Basic Transfer:

1. While you are on an active call, select **Call > Transfer > Basic Transfer** from the menu bar.



The current call is automatically put on hold, a new Call Information Panel (CIP) is displayed, and a dial tone is heard.

2. Using the keyboard or **Dial Pad**, enter the number of the party to receive the transferred call.
3. When the receiving party answers, you can privately talk to the party and then select **Basic Transfer** again to complete the transfer.

Both CIPs are no longer displayed in the main window, indicating that the transfer was successful.

You can complete the transfer at any time after the number is entered, either during the ringing state or after the second party answers.

You can change this call transfer into a conference by selecting **Basic Conference** instead of **Basic Transfer**.

4. If there is no answer, the line is busy, or you decide the transfer is not needed, do the following steps to cancel the transfer:
 - Select the **Release** button associated with the receiving party. This action terminates the call to the receiving party.
 - Return to the call on hold by selecting the **Reconnect** button on the associated CIP.

Unsupervised call transfer

Use the Unsupervised Transfer feature to transfer an active call to another extension or telephone number by entering the number of the receiving party into a dialog box. Announcement of the call to the receiving party is not available in this mode.

Steps for an Unsupervised Transfer

To transfer a call using Unsupervised Transfer:

1. While you are on an active call, select **Call > Transfer > Unsupervised Transfer**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Unsupervised Transfer** dialog box.



2. In the available field, enter the number to receive the current call.
3. Select **OK** to transfer the call.

Unlike the basic transfer, you do not have to select **Transfer** a second time to complete the transfer.

The Call Information Panel (CIP) will disappear from the main window which indicates that the transfer was successful.

Enhanced call transfer

Use the Enhanced Transfer feature to transfer the active call to another extension or telephone number by entering the number of receiving party into a dialog box. With this mode, you have the ability to transfer the call directly without announcing it to the receiving party or you can wait to announce the call and then decide whether to transfer the call.

Steps for an Enhanced Transfer

To transfer a call using enhanced transfer:

1. While you are active on a call, select **Call > Transfer > Enhanced Transfer**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Enhanced Transfer** dialog box.



2. In the available field, enter the number of the receiving party.

3. Select the **OK** button.

The caller is automatically put on hold, a new Call Information Panel (CIP) is displayed, a dial tone is heard, and Avaya IP Agent displays a confirmation dialog box.



If you need to enter digits, such as answering prompts, use the number pad on the right side of this dialog box. If you are on hold or are delayed for some reason, you can return to the original call without losing this call by selecting the **Switch to call on hold** button and select this button again to return to the transfer.

4. Remain on the line and wait for an answer.
5. Perform one of the following actions:

If...	Then...
The number dialed is answered	Announce the call and select the OK button in the confirmation dialog. Both CIPs are no longer displayed in the main window, indicating that the transfer was successful.
The number dialed is not answered or is busy	Select the Cancel button in the confirmation dialog and select the Reconnect button on the appropriate CIP to return to the held call.

Conferencing calls

This section provides information and procedures for conferencing multiple calls together so that all parties can communicate simultaneously.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Basic Conference](#) on page 143
- [Enhanced Conference](#) on page 145

Note:

If all of your call appearances are currently in use, you can conference only with existing call appearances, not new telephone numbers.

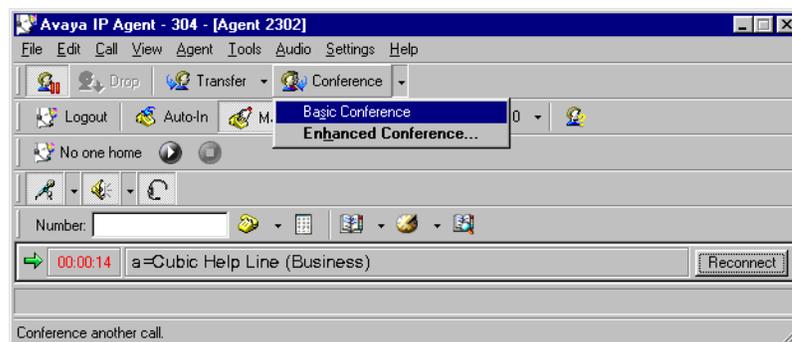
Basic Conference

Use the Basic Conference feature to connect multiple calls together so that all parties can communicate simultaneously. With this method, you use the numbers on the keyboard or the **Dial Pad** to enter the telephone numbers to conference together.

Steps for using Basic Conference

To conference a call using Basic Conference:

1. While you are active on a call, select **Call > Conference > Basic Conference**.



The current call is automatically placed on hold, a new Call Information Panel (CIP) is displayed, and a dial tone is heard.

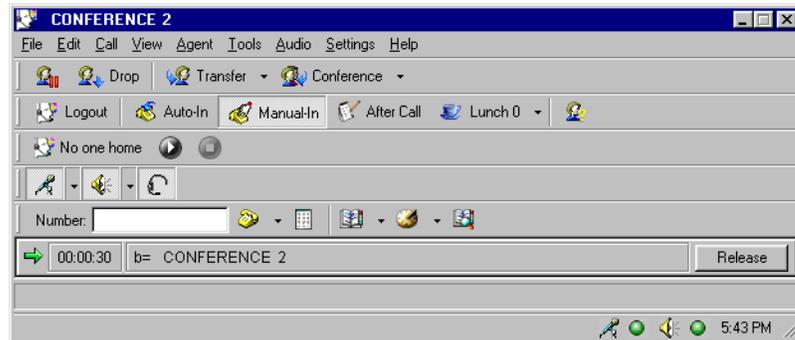
2. Use the keyboard or **Dial Pad** to enter the number of the party you want to add to the conference call.

Chapter 6: Avaya IP Agent basic operations

3. When the second party answers, you can privately talk to the second party and then select **Basic Conference** again to initiate the conference call.

You may initiate the conference when the number is entered, during the ringing state, or after the second party answers.

One CIP is displayed in the main window, which displays **CONFERENCE 2**, indicating that a conference is active.



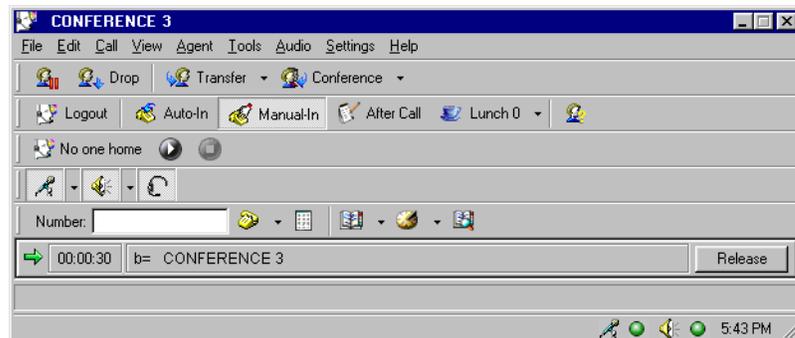
You may change the conference call into a transfer by selecting **Basic Transfer** instead of **Basic Conference** in Step 3.

4. Repeat the previous steps until you have conferenced all parties.

The single CIP displays **CONFERENCE X**, where X equals the number of parties participating in the call.

Example:

If you added three parties to the call, the CIP displays **CONFERENCE 3**.



5. If there is no answer, the line is busy, or you decide the conference is not needed:
 - Select the **Release** button associated with the party that was going to be added to the conference.
 - Return to the held call by selecting the **Reconnect** button on the associated CIP.

Enhanced Conference

Use the Enhanced Conference feature to connect multiple calls together by entering the extensions or telephone numbers through a dialog box and then adding them to an active call.

Steps for using Enhanced Conference

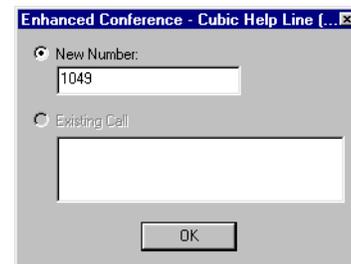
To add a party to a current call, perform the following steps:

1. While you are on an active call, select **Call > Conference > Enhanced Conference**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Enhanced Conference** dialog box.

One call appearance



More than one call appearance



Note:

The dialog box you see may be different because it depends on the number of call appearances that are present. If all available call appearances are active, the dialog box does not have a **New Number** field. If only one call appearance is active, the dialog box does not display the **Existing Call** field.

2. In the **New Number** field, enter the extension or telephone number of the party you want to add to the active call.

Note:

If you have only one call appearance, the field in which you provide a telephone number is not labeled.

3. Select the **OK** button.

The current call is automatically placed on hold, a new CIP is displayed, a dial tone is heard, and Avaya IP Agent displays a confirmation dialog box.



If you need to enter digits, such as answering prompts, use the number pad on the right side of this dialog box. If you are on hold or are delayed for some reason, you can return to the original call without losing this call by selecting the **Switch to call on hold** button and select this button again to return to the conference.

4. When you decide to add the call to the conference, select the **OK** button. If there is no answer, the line is busy, or you decide to cancel the conference, select the **Cancel** button.
If you selected the **Cancel** button, select the **Reconnect** button on the CIP associated with the original call.
5. If you selected the **OK** button, wait for an answer.

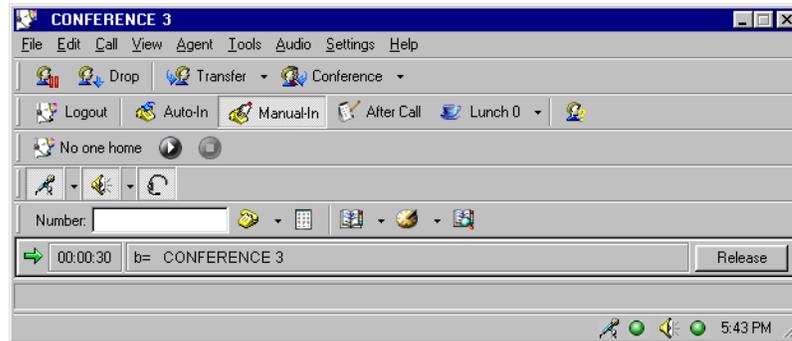
If...	Then...
The number dialed is answered	You can privately talk to the new party and then select the OK button in the confirmation dialog to add the party to the call. One CIP is displayed in your main window, which displays CONFERENCE 2 , indicating that a conference is active.
The number dialed is not answered or is busy	Select the Cancel button in the confirmation dialog and then select the Reconnect button to return to the original call.

- Repeat the previous steps until you have conferenced all parties.

The single CIP displays **CONFERENCE X**, where X equals the number of parties participating in the call.

Example:

If you added three parties to the call, the CIP displays **CONFERENCE 3**.



Any person on the conference call can hang up at any time.

- To disconnect the last person added to the conference call, select the **Drop** button.
- When the conference call is over, select the **Release** button.

The CIP is removed from the main window.

Handling outgoing calls

There are several ways you can make the handling of outgoing calls more efficient. You can use a Recent Calls list, a Speed Dial number, or an Abbreviated Dial button.

Note:

In the **Contact Directory**, you may notice that all telephone numbers are prefixed with a "+1" (in the United States). All external telephone numbers are displayed in the **Contact Directory** in canonical format, as seen in the following example:

+1 (800) 555-1234

This format is universally constant and allows this number to be dialed from anywhere in the world. This number is dialed only if deemed necessary through the **Dialing Properties** of your personal computer.

For example, a user with a laptop may have two or more sets of **Dialing Properties** configured. In the office, one set of **Dialing Properties** cause a number, sometimes a "9", to be dialed to access an external line. Alternatively, the same laptop could have a **Dialing Properties** set that does not use an external line number for when the user is at home or traveling. The format of telephone numbers in the **Contact Directory** ensures that all of these configurations will work without having to change the format.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Recent Calls list](#) on page 148
- [Using the Contact Directory](#) on page 149
- [Using the Contacts window](#) on page 153
- [Speed Dial](#) on page 157
- [Abbreviated Dial button](#) on page 160

Recent Calls list

You can quickly dial or re-dial recent incoming or outgoing calls by using the Recent Calls list. Telephone numbers are not duplicated in the list, so if the last ten calls are to the same number, the number is displayed only once in the list. Only those calls with valid telephone numbers are added to the list.

Before you begin

Before using the Recent Calls list, read and understand the following items:

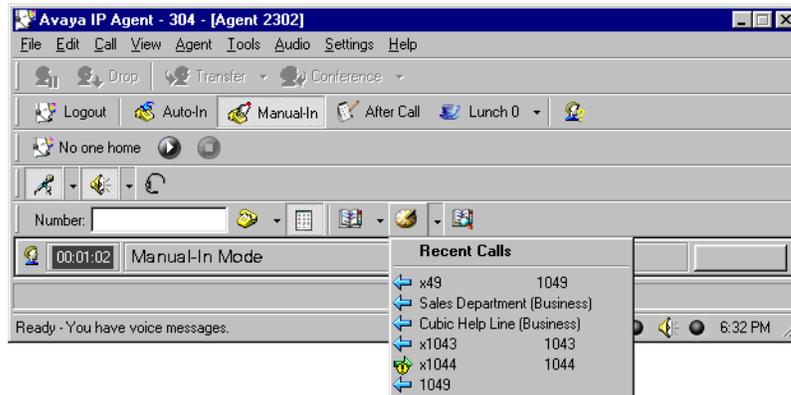
- You or your system administrator can control the number of recent call numbers displayed by setting that number in the **Program Options** dialog box.
- The list can show a maximum of the last 25 unique numbers recorded in the **Contact History** log. Abbreviated Dial buttons or numbers dialed on active calls (pin numbers) are not included in the list.
- Letters that are dialed, for example, 1866GOAVAYA, are displayed in the recent calls list as letters, not as the associated numbers.

Steps for using the Recent Calls list

To make a call using the Recent Calls list:

1. Select the down arrow next to the **Contact History** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays a list of previously dialed and received numbers.



2. Select the number you want Avaya IP Agent to dial.

A call appearance is created and the selected telephone number is dialed.

Using the Contact Directory

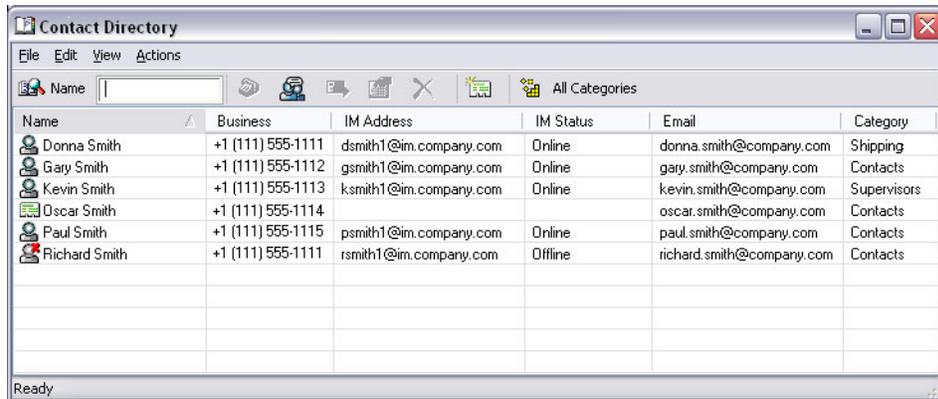
The **Contact Directory** feature stores contact information that you provide. Through this interface, you can dial telephone numbers, send e-mail messages, or send instant messages to those contacts that you have defined.

The **Contact Directory**, by default, stores the types of information shown in the following list:

- Name
- Telephone numbers
- Instant messaging user name
- Instant messaging presence state
- Email
- Category
- Pronunciation (Japanese version only)

Note:

You can also select which fields are displayed in the **Contact Directory** window. Select **Edit > Field Organizer** to display the **Field Organizer** window.



Menu bar

The following list provides the menus and menu items available for the **Contact Directory** window:

File

- **New** - This item displays the **Properties** dialog and allows entry of a new contact.
- **Import**
 - **Text File (Comma Separated Values)** - This item allows you to import a .CSV file containing contacts and their associated information.

Note:

The Import feature will not update information for existing contacts.

- **Export** - This item exports the **Contact Directory** to a comma-separated value file (.CSV)

Note:

The entries for the comma-separated values are listed below in the order that they are displayed:

- Name
- Address
- Email
- Business
- Business Fax
- Home
- Home Fax

- Mobile
- Assistant
- Car
- Company
- Pager
- Instant Message
- Track availability
- Category
- Pronunciation (Japanese version only)

Each item must be enclosed within quotation marks.

- **Search Public Directory** - This item opens the **Search Public Directory** window, which can be used to search for contact information through an Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) service. Entries can be added to the **Contact Directory** from the **Search Contact Directory** window. For more information on this feature, see [Using a Public Directory with Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 181.
- **Close** - Selecting this item closes the **Contact Directory** window.

Edit

- **Delete** - Delete the selected contact.
- **Properties** - View all information for the selected contact.
- **Field Organizer** - Organize the fields displayed in the **Contact Directory**.
- **Categories** - Add, delete, or modify the categories defined in the **Contact Directory**.

View

Use this menu to determine how the entries appear in the **Contact Directory** window. These items are similar to those used in Windows Explorer: **Large Icons**, **Small Icons**, **List**, and **Details** (default).

Selecting the **Contacts** item closes this window and displays the **Contacts** window. See [Using the Contacts window](#) on page 153 for more information.

Action

- **Call: (name)** - Select this menu item to initiate a telephone call to the highlighted contact.
- **Send Email** - Select this menu item to initiate an e-mail message to the highlighted contact.

Toolbar

The toolbar of the **Contact Directory** window contains the following controls:

- **Name** - This field allows the dynamic filtering of the entries in the **Contact Directory** on any field. Select the name button to display the list of fields available for the **Contact Directory**. After you select the field on which to filter, enter letters or digits in the corresponding field. Each character entered in this field causes only those entries matching the filter to remain visible. For example, entering the letter S causes all entries that do not begin with that letter to be hidden. For numeric fields, any numbers entered in this field are used to filter the entries. The filtering for numeric fields is not sequential. Any entries that contain the string of numbers entered will remain visible. Additionally, any punctuation existing in the entry is ignored. For example, entering the numbers 123 would match against the following entries:
 - (555) 555-1234
 - (800) 123-5555
 - 1 (230) 555-5555
 - 512-3555
- **Dial Number** - Select this button to dial the number entered in Number field.
- **Send Touch Tones** - Select this button send DTMF tones after you are connected, as with the DialPad.
- **Send Email** - Select this button to open an e-mail message to the highlighted entry.
- **Properties** - Select this button to display a dialog box containing the details of the highlighted entry. This dialog box also allows modification of this information.
- **Delete** - Select this button to delete the highlighted entry.
- **New entry** - Select this button to display the **Properties** dialog and enter the information for a new contact.
- **Categories** - Select this button to display a list of all categories defined in the **Contact Directory** and to filter the existing contacts. Selecting one of the categories in this list results in only those contacts assigned to that category remaining visible.

Contact Directory window usage

Within the **Contact Directory** window, you can perform the following actions on a selected contact:

- With the mouse, right-click on an entry to display a pop-up menu containing the following items:
 - **Call** (*contact*) - Initiates a call to the selected contact.
 - **Send Email** - Initiates an e-mail to the selected contact.
 - **Delete** - Removes the selected contact from the **Contact Directory**.

- **Properties** - Displays a dialog box listing all information for the selected contact. This dialog box also allows editing of that information.
- Press the **Enter** key or double-click the mouse to initiate a call to a contact.
- Press **Alt + Enter** to display all information for the selected contact.
- Press the **Delete** key to remove the selected contact from the **Contact Directory**.

You can also sort the entries in the **Contact Directory** by clicking the title of any column. The sorting is done based on the column selected and alternates between ascending to descending order with subsequent clicks.

More information

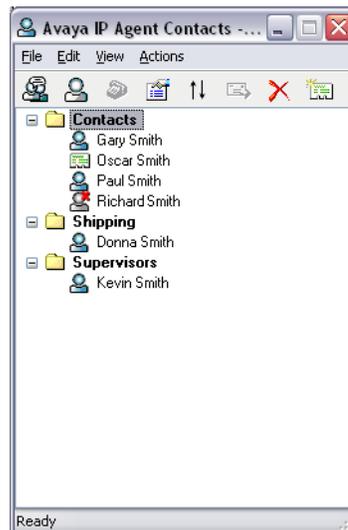
The following topics provide additional information on the use of the **Contact Directory** window:

- [Administering Speed Dial from the Contact Directory](#) on page 157
- [Searching a Public Directory](#) on page 183

Using the Contacts window

The **Contacts** window displays your contacts in a vertical format, separated into groups that you define. These contacts can be associated with e-mail, telephone numbers, instant messaging, or a combination of these types.

To open this window, select **Tools > Contacts** from the Avaya IP Agent main window.



Menu bar

The following list provides the menus and menu items available for the **Contacts** window:

File

- **Close** - Select this item to close the **Contacts** window.

Edit

- **Delete** - Select this item to remove the highlighted contact from the **Contacts** window and the Avaya IP Agent database.
- **Properties** - Select this item to display a dialog box containing the details of the highlighted entry. This dialog box also allows modification of this information.
- **Rename** - Select this item to rename the highlighted contact. This action only changes the name of the contact. All other information is retained.
- **Add Contact** - Select this item to add a new contact. A blank properties page is displayed so that you can enter the necessary information. After you have entered the necessary information, you must close the properties page to have this contact appear in the **Contacts** window.
- **Add Group** - Select this item to add a new group to this window. This new group will appear as a **Category** in the Contact Directory window.

View

- **IM Preferences** - Select this item to open the **Instant Messaging Preferences** window, which allows you to change your instant messaging configuration, such as alerts, logging, and automated responses.
- **IM Wizard** - Select this item to open the Instant Messaging Wizard, which allows you to set your instant messaging configuration. You can only select this item if you are not logged in to a SIP Enablement Services for instant messaging.
- **Contact Directory** - Select this item to close the **Contacts** window and display the **Contact Directory** window.
- **Search Public Directory** - Select this item to display the **Search Public Directory** window, which allows you to search an LDAP public directory service.
- **Always on Top** - Select this item to set the **Contacts** window to always be displayed in front of other windows. This feature is enabled if a check mark appears next to this item in the menu.

Actions

- **Send Instant Message** - Select this item to display a dialog box that allows you to enter an instant messaging user name of an Avaya IP Agent user so that you can send an instant message. After you have entered a valid user name, and **Instant Message Session** window is displayed.
- **My Presence Status** - Select this item to display a list of available presence states. Select one of these presence states to notify other instant messaging users of your availability.
- **Track** - Select this item to track the presence status of the highlighted instant messaging user. This feature is enabled for the highlighted contact if a check mark appears next to this item in the menu.
- **Block** - Select this item to block instant messages from the highlighted instant messaging user. This feature is enabled for the highlighted contact if a check mark appears next to this item in the menu.
- **Dial Number** - Select this item to have Avaya IP Agent dial the telephone number of the highlighted contact. If no telephone number has been defined for the highlighted contact, this item is disabled.
- **Send Touch Tones** - Select this item to send DTMF tones after you are connected, as with the DialPad.
- **Send Email** - Select this item to open a blank e-mail that is addressed to the highlighted contact. If no e-mail address has been defined for the highlighted contact, this item is disabled.
- **Sort** - Select this item to display a list of sort options for your contacts. These sort options are variations on ascending and descending alphabetical order and can include a secondary sort on the presence state of other instant messaging users. If you select an **online only** sort option, only those contacts with an instant messaging address are displayed; all other contacts are hidden.

Toolbar



The toolbar of the **Contacts** window contains the following controls:

- **Start IM Session** - Select this button to display a dialog box that allows you to enter an instant messaging user name of an Avaya IP Agent user so that you can send an instant message. After you have entered a valid user name, and **Instant Message Session** window is displayed.
- **Presence state**- Select this button to display a list of presence states. Select the presence state that you want to other instant messaging users to see for your user name.
- **Dial Number** - Select this button to have Avaya IP Agent dial the telephone number of the highlighted contact. If no telephone number has been defined for the highlighted contact, this button is disabled.

- **Send Touch Tones** - send DTMF tones after you are connected, as with the DialPad.
- **Properties** - Select this button to display a dialog box containing the details of the highlighted entry. This dialog box also allows modification of this information.
- **Sort** - Select this button to display a list of sort options for your contacts. These sort options are variations on ascending and descending alphabetical order and can include a secondary sort on the presence state of other instant messaging users. If you select an **online only** sort option, only those contacts with an instant messaging address are displays; all other contacts are hidden.
- **Send Email** - Select this button to open a blank e-mail that is addressed to the highlighted contact. If no e-mail address has been defined for the highlighted contact, this button is disabled.
- **Delete** - Select this button to remove the highlighted contact or group from the **Contacts** window and the Avaya IP Agent database.



CAUTION:

If you select a group with contacts, those contacts are also deleted.

- **Add Contact** - Select this button to add a new contact. A blank properties page is displayed so that you can enter the necessary information. After you have entered the necessary information, you must close the properties page to have this contact appear in the **Contacts** window.

Contacts window usage

Within the **Contacts** window, you can perform the following actions on a selected contact:

- With the mouse, right-click on an entry to display a pop-up menu containing the following items:
 - **Send Instant Message** - Initiates an instant messaging session to the selected contact.
 - **Dial Number** - Initiates a telephone call to the selected contact.
 - **Track** - Updates the presence status of the selected contact when it changes.
 - **Block** - Prohibits the selected contact from sending an instant message to you.
 - **Send Email** - Initiates an e-mail to the selected contact.
 - **Rename** - Changes the name of the selected contact. This change only appears on the local personal computer.
 - **Delete** - Removes the selected contact from the **Contacts** window.
 - **Properties** - Displays a dialog box listing information for the selected contact. This dialog box also allows editing of that information.
- Press the **Enter** key or double-click the mouse to initiate an instant message session to the selected contact.

- Press the **Delete** key to remove the selected contact from the **Contacts** window.

Speed Dial

Use the Speed Dial feature to dial frequently-used telephone numbers by selecting entries from the Speed Dial list or by pressing function keys (F2-F8) on the keyboard. A maximum of 25 telephone numbers can be assigned to the Speed Dial list. Speed Dial telephone numbers can be administered through two methods.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Administering Speed Dial from the Contact Directory](#) on page 157
- [Administering Speed Dial from the Speed Dial Numbers window](#) on page 158
- [Using a Speed Dial telephone number](#) on page 159

Administering Speed Dial from the Contact Directory

This section provides the procedure for assigning an entry in the **Contact Directory** as a Speed Dial telephone number.

To assign a telephone number in the **Contact Directory** to the Speed Dial list:

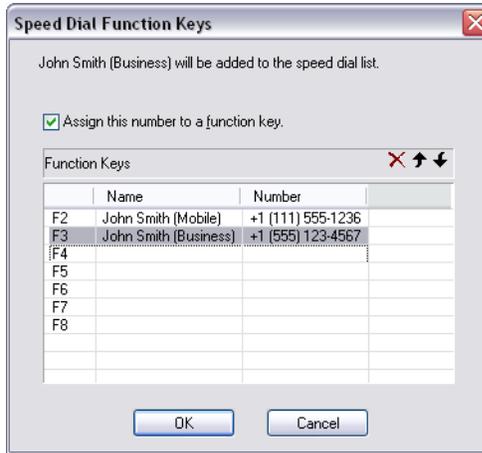
1. In the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Tools > Contacts**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Contacts** window.
2. In the **Contacts** window, select **View > Contact Directory**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Contact Directory** window.
3. Do the appropriate step in the following table:

If...	Then...
You are creating a new entry	Select File > New... from the menu bar.
You are editing an entry	Highlight the entry and select Edit > Properties from the menu bar. Avaya IP Agent displays the Properties dialog box.

4. Enter or edit the appropriate information in the **Properties** dialog box.

5. Place a check mark in the **Speed Dial** check box next to the telephone number that you want to use as a Speed Dial number.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Speed Dial Function Keys** dialog box.



6. If you want to have the telephone number for this **Contact Directory** entry available when a function key, such as F2, F3, ..., F8, is pressed, select the **Assign this number to a function key** option.

The **Contact Directory** entry appears in the **F2** row.

Note:

If you want to assign this new entry to another function key, highlight it and use the up and down arrow icons in the dialog box to move the entry to a new location in the list.

7. When you are satisfied with the function key that this number has been assigned to, press the **OK** button.
8. In the **Properties** window, select the **OK** button to close it.

Administering Speed Dial from the Speed Dial Numbers window

This section provides the procedure for creating a Speed Dial telephone number that does not exist in the **Contact Directory**. Once you create a Speed Dial telephone number with this method, this new entry is added to the **Contact Directory** and can be edited the same as other entries.

To create a new Speed Dial telephone number:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Tools > Speed Dial Numbers**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Speed Dial Numbers** window.
2. In the **Speed Dial Numbers** windows, select **File > New**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **New Speed Dial** window.

3. In the **Name** field, enter a unique name for this Speed Dial entry.
4. If necessary, select the button to the right of the **Business** field to change the category of the telephone number that will be entered.
5. Once you have set the category, enter the telephone number into the labeled field.
6. If you want to assign this Speed Dial telephone number to a function key (F2, F3...), place a check mark in the **Assign this number to a function key** check box.
7. If you assigned this Speed Dial telephone number to a function key, you can change the key to which it is assigned by highlighting the entry in the **Function Keys** list and using the up and down buttons at the top of this list.

Note:

You cannot edit an existing entry from the **Speed Dial Numbers** window. To edit an existing entry, you must use the **Contact Directory**.

Using a Speed Dial telephone number

To select a Speed Dial number:

1. Select the down arrow next to the **Contact Directory** button in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Speed Dial Numbers** list.



2. Select the party that you want to call.

A call appearance is created and the telephone number is dialed.

Note:

If you have assigned a Speed Dial telephone number to a function key, you can simply press that function key to dial the associated telephone number.

You can also display the **Speed Dial Numbers** window by selecting the **Speed Dials** button on the same toolbar.

Abbreviated Dial button

If the Abbreviated Dial feature has been administered on the Avaya communication server for your extension, you can store telephone numbers in the **Phone Features** window for quick and easy dialing. Each number can be a complete or partial telephone number, an extension number, a trunk, or feature code.

Steps for using Abbreviated Dial

To make a call using an Abbreviated Dial button:

1. Select **Tools > Phone Features**.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Phone Features** window.

2. In the **Phone Features** dialog box, select the Abbreviated Dial button associated with the number you want to dial.

A call appearance is created and the selected telephone number is dialed.

The button label for an Abbreviated Dial is a number, whereas the button label for an autodial button is the word *autodial* plus the number. This difference is shown in the following table:

Abbreviated Dial	Autodial
51008	autodial 51008

Using instant messaging

The instant messaging feature allows you to send and receive text messages with other Avaya IP Agent users. This feature also allows you to track the presence state of other instant messaging users so that you can tell if the agent is available, away, or busy with some other task.

This feature behaves similarly to other instant messaging products. When an instant message session is initiated, both users will see an **Instant Message Session** window. Through this window, the users will enter text messages and see the messages of the other user.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Starting an instant message session](#) on page 161
- [Sending and receiving instant messages](#) on page 162
- [Changing your presence state](#) on page 162

- [Blocking users](#) on page 163
- [Tracking user presence states](#) on page 164
- [Viewing message history](#) on page 164
- [Other instant messaging features](#) on page 165

Starting an instant message session

You can send an instant message through one of the following methods:

- [Starting an instant message session without a contact list](#) on page 161
- [Starting an instant message session through the Contacts window](#) on page 161
- [Starting an instant message session through the Contact Directory window](#) on page 162
- [Starting an instant message session from a Call Information Panel](#) on page 162

Starting an instant message session without a contact list

To send an instant message to another Avaya IP Agent without the use of a contact list, do the following steps:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Instant Messaging > Send a message** or select the **Start Instant Messaging Session** button on the Instant Messaging toolbar.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Contact address** dialog box.
2. In the **Contact address** dialog box, enter the instant messaging address of the user to whom you want to send an instant message.
3. Select the **OK** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays an **Instant Message Session** window for the user you specified.
4. Go to [Sending and receiving instant messages](#) on page 162 to learn more about sending and receiving instant messages.

Starting an instant message session through the Contacts window

To send an instant message to another Avaya IP Agent user from the **Contacts** window, do one of the following actions:

- Double-click the online contact to whom you want to send an instant message.
- Highlight the instant messaging contact to whom you want to send an instant message and select **Actions > Send Instant Message** from the menu bar.
- Right-click the instant messaging contact to whom you want to send an instant message and select **Send Instant Message** from the resulting popup menu.

Once the **Instant Message Session** window is displayed, go to [Sending and receiving instant messages](#) on page 162 to learn more about sending and receiving instant messages.

Starting an instant message session through the Contact Directory window

To send an instant message to another Avaya IP Agent use from the Contact Directory window, do one of the following actions:

- Highlight the instant messaging contact to whom you want to send an instant message and select **Actions > Send Instant Message** from the menu bar.
- Right-click the instant messaging contact to whom you want to send an instant message and select **Send Instant Message** from the resulting popup menu.

Once the **Instant Message Session** window is displayed, go to [Sending and receiving instant messages](#) on page 162 to learn more about sending and receiving instant messages.

Starting an instant message session from a Call Information Panel

If Avaya IP Agent displays a Call Information Panel (CIP) from an instant messaging user in your **Contacts** window, that CIP displays an instant message button. You have the option of selecting this button to start an instant message session with that contact.

Sending and receiving instant messages

Once an **Instant Message Session** window is displayed, you can have a text-based conversation with the selected instant messaging user.

To send text to another user, do the following steps:

1. In the text field at the lower section of the **Instant Message Session** window, enter a text message.
2. Select the **Send** button to the right of the field.

The text message is sent to the other user and is displayed in the larger text field in the upper section of this window.

3. When the other user responds, that text message is displayed below your previous message.

Changing your presence state

Your instant messaging presence state is a way of broadcasting your current availability to other instant messaging users. The following list provides the presence states that are available in Avaya IP Agent:

- **Online** - This state indicates that you are available for instant messaging.
- **Busy** - This state indicates that you are busy with some task and cannot participate in an instant messaging session.

- **Away** - This state indicates that you are not at your personal computer and cannot participate in an instant messaging session.
- **On the Phone** - This state indicates that you are currently participating in a telephone conversation and may not be readily available to reply to an instant message.
- **Appear Offline** - This state provides the appearance that you are not logged in to the SIP Enablement Services. This state does not prevent you from receiving instant messages when an address is manually entered in the **Contact address** dialog box.

You can change your presence state in several areas:

- From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Instant Messaging > My Presence Status** and select the appropriate state.
- From the Instant Messaging toolbar on the Avaya IP Agent main window, select the **Change instant messaging status** button and then select the appropriate state from the resulting popup menu.
- In the **Contacts** window, select **Actions > My Presence Status** and select the appropriate state.

Blocking users

In some situations, you may want to block other users from sending you an instant message. Any attempts by that user to send you an instant message will fail. You will not be notified when a block has intercepted an instant message.

To block an Avaya IP Agent user from sending you an instant message, do the following steps:

1. In the **Contacts** or **Contact Directory** window, highlight the instant messaging user that you want to block.
2. Do one of the following actions:
 - From the menu bar, select **Actions > Block**.
 - Right-click the contact entry and select **Block** from the resulting popup menu.

Note:

If a check mark is displayed next to the **Block** item, the selected instant messaging user is already blocked. Selecting this option again will unblock the selected instant messaging user.

When you block another user, the **Contact Directory** window will reflect that condition in the **IM Status** field.

Tracking user presence states

Presence states allow you to view the availability of other instant messaging users. Using this capability, you can determine the possibility of receiving a response from an instant messaging user. By default, all instant messaging contacts have the **Track** feature enabled.



Tip:

For performance reasons, Avaya recommends that you track only 50 or fewer instant messaging contacts. Exceeding this limit could result in delays of presence state changes.

To change the tracking of the presence state for a contact, do the following steps:

1. In the **Contacts** or **Contact Directory** window, highlight the instant messaging user for whom you want to change presence state tracking.
2. Do one of the following actions:
 - From the menu bar, select **Actions > Track**.
 - Right-click the contact entry and select **Track** from the resulting popup menu.

Note:

If a check mark is displayed next to the **Track** item, the selected instant messaging user is already being tracked. Selecting this option again will stop the automatic updating of the presence state for that user.

When you stop tracking the presence state of an instant messaging user, the Contact Directory window displays **Unknown** in the **IM Status** field.

Viewing message history

If you enabled the storing of all instant message sessions, all of your conversations are saved locally on your personal computer. See [History tab](#) on page 251 for more information about saving your instant message sessions.

To view an instant message session that occurred in the past, do the following steps:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window, select **Tools > Contact History**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Contact History** window.
2. Locate the instant messaging session that you want to review and highlight it.
In the **Contact History** window, instant messaging sessions have an icon with a chat bubble and an arrow that indicates the initiator of that session.
3. Do one of the following actions:

- Right-click the instant messaging session entry and select the **View IM Session** item from the resulting popup menu.
- **Select Instant Messaging > View IM Session** from the menu bar of the **Contact History** window.

The instant messaging session is displayed in a Web browser window.

Other instant messaging features

This section contains information for other instant messaging features that you can use to customize and simplify your instant messaging sessions:

- [Font](#) on page 165
- [Emoticons](#) on page 165
- [Responses](#) on page 166
- [Timestamps](#) on page 167

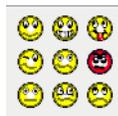
Font

The Font feature allows you to change the font, size, color, and font style of your message text.

During an instant message session, you can access the **Font** dialog box by selecting the **Font** button in the **Instant Message Session** window or by selecting **Edit > Change Font** from the menu bar.

Emoticons

Emoticons are graphical icons that reflect your mood to the other person in your instant messaging session. These icons can be inserted anywhere in your text messages.



These icons can be inserted into your text message by selecting the **Emoticons** button in the **Instant Message Session** window.

Emoticons can also be created manually by combining specific characters. These combinations are interpreted and replaced with the corresponding emoticon when the instant message is sent. The following table provides the character combinations for each emoticon:

Emoticon	Character combination
	:)
	:D
	:P
	;))
	:S
	:@
	:
	:s
	: (

Responses

When you receive an instant message from other Avaya IP Agent user, you can use the Responses feature to select a pre-defined message to send. These responses are used when you are busy and do not want to take the time to manually enter a reply.

To send a pre-defined reply to an instant message, select the **Responses** button in the **Instant Message Session** window and select a response from the resulting popup menu.

You can customize your responses through the **Responses** tab of the **Instant Messaging Preferences** dialog box. See [Responses tab](#) on page 252 for more information.

Timestamps

The Timestamps feature displays the time when an instant message is sent or received. The timestamp is displayed next to the user name for each message. To change the visibility of timestamps, select **View > Show Timestamps** in the menu bar of the **Instant Message Session** window.

A check mark is displayed next to this menu item when the feature is enabled. Selecting this option again will remove the check mark and hide all timestamps in the **Instant Message Session** window.

Using the Web Dialer in Internet Explorer

The Web Dialer is associated with the Click-to-Dial feature of Avaya IP Agent. This feature has a toolbar that you can display in Internet Explorer.



The Web Dialer allows you to do the following tasks:

- Enter a telephone number and call that number through Avaya IP Agent.
- Select a previously-entered telephone number and call that number through Avaya IP Agent.
- Click a button to start Avaya IP Agent or make the Avaya IP Agent main window display itself in front of other open windows.
- Select text (for example, Smith) and then drag and drop the selected text to the Web Dialer for an Avaya IP Agent contact directory lookup.
- Use the Avaya Web Dialer entry in the context menu to dial a number, clear the dialing history, open the Avaya technical support Web page, or display information about the Web Dialer component.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Displaying the Web Dialer toolbar](#) on page 168
- [Calling a telephone number through the Web Dialer toolbar](#) on page 168
- [Calling a previously-dialed telephone number](#) on page 168
- [Using the Avaya IP Agent button](#) on page 168
- [Using the Web Dialer context menu item](#) on page 169

Displaying the Web Dialer toolbar

You can display and move the Web Dialer toolbar in the same manner as other Internet Explorer toolbars.

To display the Web Dialer toolbar, do the following steps:

1. Open Internet Explorer.
2. From the menu bar, select **View > Toolbars > Avaya Web Dialer**.

Internet Explorer displays the Avaya Web Dialer toolbar.

Calling a telephone number through the Web Dialer toolbar

You can make a telephone call from your Web browser through Avaya IP Agent by entering a telephone number in the combination text box on the Avaya Web Dialer toolbar and pressing the **Enter** key or selecting the telephone button to the right of the field.

Alternatively, you can highlight a telephone number in the Web page and then drag-and-drop it into the Web Dialer toolbar text box.

Calling a previously-dialed telephone number

You can call a telephone number that was previously entered in the Web Dialer toolbar by selecting it from the drop-down list on the Toolbar.

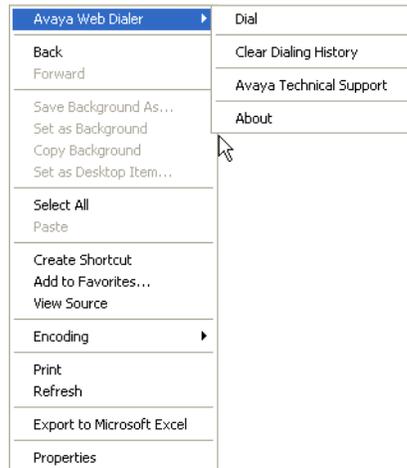
Using the Avaya IP Agent button

The Avaya IP Agent button on the Web Dialer toolbar can be used to do the following things:

- Start Avaya IP Agent
- Display the Avaya IP Agent main window in front of any other open windows on the desktop

Using the Web Dialer context menu item

The Avaya Web Dialer component also includes a menu item that appears on the context menu that is displayed when you right-click within the Internet Explorer window.



On this menu, you can select the following items:

- **Dial** - Selecting this item when a phone number has been selected on a web page, as would be required to copy the selected number to the Windows clipboard, will dial the selected phone number in Avaya IP Agent.
- **Clear Dialing History** - Selecting this item causes the list of previously-dialed telephone numbers in the list box on the Web Dialer toolbar to be deleted. This action does not remove these telephone numbers from the **Contact History** window.
- **Avaya Technical Support** - Selecting this item opens the Avaya technical support Web site in a new Internet Explorer window.
- **About** - Selecting this item displays a message box that provides the version of Avaya Web Dialer.

Chapter 7: Agent Greetings

This section provides information and procedures for the creation and use of agent greetings through Avaya IP Agent.

The Agent Greetings feature frees you from having to repeatedly say the same greeting at the beginning of each call. When a call is answered, your microphone is muted and the selected greeting is played. After the greeting is played, your microphone is un-muted and you are able to talk to the calling party.

Additionally, it is possible to configure agent greetings to play only for specific telephone numbers or VDNs from which calls originate.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Creating agent greetings](#) on page 172
- [Setting the active agent greeting](#) on page 173
- [Setting activation criteria for agent greetings](#) on page 173
- [Deleting agent greetings](#) on page 174
- [Copying agent greeting files](#) on page 175

Before you begin

Read and understand the following items before you work with the Agent Greetings feature:

- Avaya IP Agent supports agent greetings for Avaya Callmaster VI endpoints and IP endpoints using the Road Warrior configuration. The Telecommuter and Avaya Telephone configurations can support agent greetings if you use an Avaya Switcher II headset.

For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:

http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf

- Agent greetings are stored in different locations, depending on your current Avaya IP Agent configuration.
 - Road Warrior / Telecommuter / Avaya Telephone - You can store the agent greetings on your personal computer or in a network location. These configurations will support up to 60 greetings of 30 seconds each.
 - Callmaster VI - Agent greetings are stored on the Callmaster VI unit and not on the personal computer.
- To view or configure the optional settings for agent greetings, such as configuring the agent greeting to play for a specific VDN or ANI, see [Agent Greetings settings](#) on page 252.

- If you are using the Avaya Switcher II headset, you must run the Audio Tuning Wizard and enable the **Play greetings via Avaya Switcher II** check box. You must then close and restart Avaya IP Agent for **Agent Greetings** to appear in the **Tools** menu.

Creating agent greetings

This section provides the procedure for recording an agent greeting.

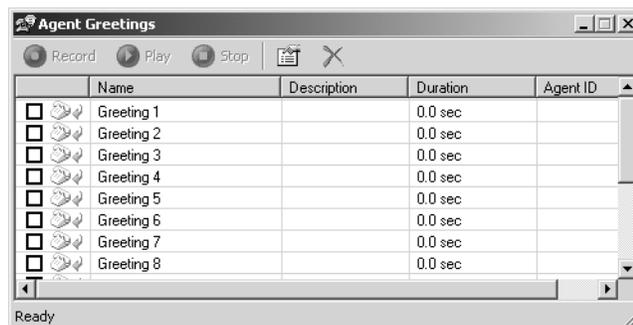
Note:

Before users of the Callmaster VI configuration can record agent greetings, the user must first deactivate the headset by clicking the headset button in the headset toolbar.

Steps for creating an agent greeting

To record an agent greeting:

1. Change to an inactive agent mode, such as Auxiliary Work or After Call Work, to prevent interruptions from incoming calls when you are recording your greeting.
2. From the Avaya IP Agent main window menu bar, select **Tools > Agent Greetings**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Greetings** window.



3. Highlight an agent greeting in the list by clicking on the name.
4. Select the **Record** button.
5. By using the microphone that is either on your headset or attached to the personal computer, speak your greeting.
6. When you have finished recording your greeting, select the **Stop** button.
Avaya IP Agent enables and updates the selected greeting.

Setting the active agent greeting

This section provides the procedure for setting an agent greeting as the one to play for incoming calls.

Steps for setting an active agent greeting

To set an agent greeting to activate:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window menu bar, select **Tools > Agent Greetings**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Greetings** window.
2. Place a check mark next to the agent greeting that will be used for all incoming calls.

Note:

There are some circumstances when it is possible to have more than one agent greeting active at the same time. For example, you can set multiple agent greetings to be active if each greeting has a unique VDN as the activation criteria. This is also true for agent greetings that play for specific Automatic Number Identification (ANI) telephone numbers or Prompted Digits. If two agent greetings meet the same criteria so that both would play for a single call, Avaya IP Agent restricts the activation of both agent greetings.

3. Close the **Agent Greetings** window.

Avaya IP Agent updates the agent greeting toolbar to display the currently active greeting and uses this greeting for all incoming calls.

Alternate method

If you have the Agent Greetings toolbar displayed in the Avaya IP Agent main window, you can use the mouse to click the agent greetings button and, from the resulting menu, select a different agent greeting. This action sets the selected agent greeting as active.

Setting activation criteria for agent greetings

This section provides the procedure for configuring the properties of an agent greeting. These settings include the name, description, and auto-play criteria for the ANI, VDN, or Prompted Digits that will activate the agent greeting.

Steps for setting agent greeting activation criteria

To set the activation criteria for an Agent Greeting:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window menu bar, select **Tools > Agent Greetings**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Greetings** window.
2. Highlight the agent greeting to modify by clicking on the name.
3. Select the **Properties** button in the button bar.



Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Greetings** dialog box for the selected greeting.



4. Use this dialog box to change the settings for this agent greeting. See [Agent Greetings settings](#) on page 252 for complete information on the different panels for this dialog box and the associated controls.

Deleting agent greetings

This section provides the procedure for deleting an existing agent greeting.

Steps for deleting an agent greeting

To delete an existing agent greeting:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window menu bar, select **Tools > Agent Greetings**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Agent Greetings** window.
2. Highlight an agent greeting in the list by clicking on the name.
3. Select the Delete button which is displayed as an X on the toolbar.
Avaya IP Agent deletes the selected agent greeting.

Copying agent greeting files

Use **Tools > Program Options > Greetings Options** to enter the location of the directory to store audio files containing recorded agent greetings and audio information.

Note:

If you are upgrading from a previous version of Avaya IP Agent, copy the Greeting.tbl and Greeting*.wav files from the old location to the new location, or you will get a default greeting table.

Chapter 8: Using VuStats

The VuStats feature is used to pass contact center information from the Avaya communication server to a display on a station or extension. Supervisors and agents use this feature to monitor contact center activity and statistics.

The **VuStats** window of Avaya IP Agent displays any VuStats buttons that have been assigned to the extension by the communication server administrator.

Using Avaya IP Agent, you will be able to specify how long the program monitors each transmission of VuStats information before it moves to the next one.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Configuring an extension for VuStats through the Avaya communication server](#) on page 177
- [Viewing a single set of VuStats information in Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 178
- [Adjusting intervals for monitoring VuStats](#) on page 179

Configuring an extension for VuStats through the Avaya communication server

For an Avaya IP Agent extension to display VuStats information, the following configurations on the Avaya communication server must be done:

- The extension must be assigned as a telephone type that has a display. Avaya recommends the 8434D or 606A1 telephone types for Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations.
- The extension must have one or more buttons assigned with the `vu-display` feature. Different streams of VuStats information are available by specifying the `format` and `ID` parameters of the `vu-display` feature.
- For different views and formats, multiple VuStats configurations can be assigned to the buttons for this extension.

Configuration

For information on configuring extensions for the VuStats feature through your Avaya communication server, see the "VuStats" section of *Guide to ACD Call Centers*.

Definitions and reference material for the VuStats fields on the forms of the Avaya communication server can be found in the Administrator Guide for your Avaya communication server.

Viewing a single set of VuStats information in Avaya IP Agent

This section provides the procedure for displaying a single set of VuStats information in the **Phone Display** panel of the Avaya IP Agent main window.

Before you begin

To view VuStats information in the main window of Avaya IP Agent, you must ensure that the **Phone Display** panel is visible. Select the **View** menu from the main menu and verify that a check mark next to the **Phone Display** menu item is present. If a check mark is not present, select the item to enable it.

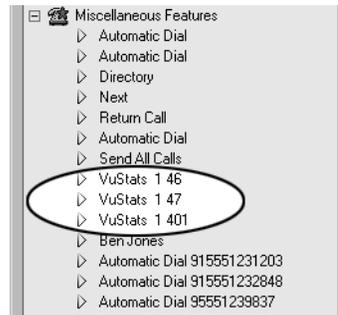
Before performing this procedure, the VuStats feature must have been assigned to one or more buttons for this extension. See [Configuring an extension for VuStats through the Avaya communication server](#) on page 177 for more information.

Steps

To display VuStats in the Avaya IP Agent main window:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent main window menu bar, select **Tools > Phone Features**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Phone Features** window.

2. Select the VuStats information to view by double-clicking the associated entry in the Phone Features window.



Avaya IP Agent displays the selected VuStats information in the **Phone Display** toolbar of the main window.

Adjusting intervals for monitoring VuStats

When VuStats are being displayed through the **VuStats Monitor**, you can configure the following time-related items:

- **Refresh Rate** - The period of time that passes before focus is changed from the last line of display in the list to the first line.
- **Display Interval** - The period of time that passes before the **VuStats Monitor** changes focus from one VuStats line of display to the next one in the list.

Before you begin

You should ensure that you set the **VuStats Monitor** time intervals so that each line of display can be updated before the **Refresh Rate** changes focus to the top of the list. For example, if you have six VuStats lines of display in the **VuStats Monitor** and the **Display Interval** is set for 10 seconds, your **Refresh Rate** should be 60 seconds or greater.



Tip:

If a VuStats line of display has not been updated before the next VuStats item begins to update, increase the **Display Interval** delay.

Steps

To change the periods of time used in the **VuStats Monitor** window:

1. Start the VuStats Monitor.
2. Click the Refresh Rate button on the toolbar of the VuStats Monitor window.
Avaya IP Agent displays a menu with the following time intervals:
 - 10 seconds
 - 20 seconds
 - 30 seconds
 - 60 seconds
 - 120 seconds
3. Select the interval that should pass before focus is changed from the last line of display to the first line.
4. Click the Display Interval button on the toolbar of the VuStats Monitor window.
Avaya IP Agent displays a menu with the following time intervals:
 - 5 seconds
 - 10 seconds
5. Select the interval that should pass before focus is changed from one line of display to the next line.
When focus moves to a line of display in the **VuStats Monitor**, the VuStats data for that line is updated.
6. After setting one or both time intervals, click the Start button on the toolbar.
The **VuStats Monitor** window begins displaying VuStats information according to the time intervals specified.

Chapter 9: Using a Public Directory with Avaya IP Agent

The *Search Public Directory* feature of Avaya IP Agent provides access to corporate or public directory services which enable you to query those services by any defined field. This feature can function as an LDAPv2 or LDAPv3 client. Another name for this feature is *Search LDAP* (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol).

This section includes the following topics:

- [Defining a Public Directory service](#) on page 181
- [Searching a Public Directory](#) on page 183
- [Selecting the fields to display and the order](#) on page 186
- [Identifying multiple telephone number fields](#) on page 188
- [Deleting a Public Directory service](#) on page 189

Defining a Public Directory service

So that you can search for information on a Public Directory (LDAP) server by using Avaya IP Agent, a definition of the service must first be created and configured.

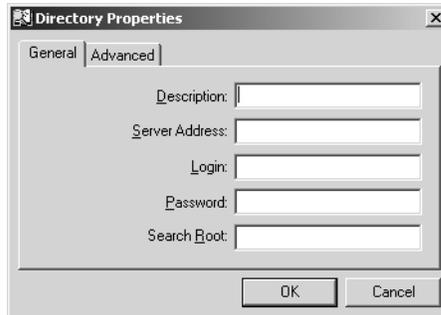
Steps for defining a Public Directory service

To define and configure a Public Directory service for Avaya IP Agent:

1. From the Avaya IP Agent menu bar, select **Tools > Search Public Directory**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Search Public Directory** window.

- From the menu bar of the **Search Public Directory** window, select **File > Add Public Directory**.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Directory Properties** window.



- In the following fields, enter the necessary information:
 - **Description** - Enter a name by which you will identify this Public Directory server. This field is required.
 - **Server Address** - Enter the network domain or IP address of the Public Directory server. This field is required.
 - **Login** - If authorization is required by the Public Directory server, enter a valid user name in this field.
 - **Password** - Enter the password for the user name specified in the previous field.
 - **Search Root** - Enter an LDAP format string representing the type of information being sought. For example, `ou=people, o=mycompany.com` specifies that information under the organization unit of "people" within the organization of "mycompany.com" is used for the search. Refer to the documentation for your LDAP system and company database configuration for more information on *Base DN* or *Search Root* strings.

If you are unsure of the settings for your Public Directory server, contact the administrator of that system.

- Select the **Advanced** tab if changes to the following defaults are required:
 - **Port:** 389
 - **Search Timeout:** 200 (secs)
 - **Max Entries Returned:** 200
 - **Bind Option:**
 - **Simple Bind** - Select this option if this service is to interface with an LDAPv2 server.
 - **Active Directory GSS Bind** - Select this option if this service is to interface with an LDAPv3 server.

5. After entering all necessary information, select the **OK** button.

Avaya IP Agent adds this Public Directory to the list of available services and closes the **Directory Properties** dialog box.

Searching a Public Directory

After a Public Directory service has been defined, a search against that database can now be performed. If a Public Directory service has not been defined, see [Defining a Public Directory service](#) on page 181.

Before you begin

You can optionally use the asterisk as a wildcard in a name search as described in Step 6 in [Steps for searching a Public Directory](#) on page 183. However, to search on other fields, a wildcard is required. For example, to search a directory field called job function for the string "service," you must enter "service*" in the search field.

Steps for searching a Public Directory

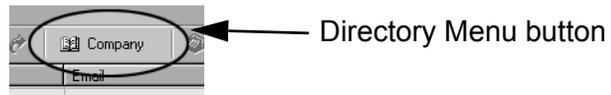
To search a Public Directory service:

1. In the Avaya IP Agent menu bar, select **Tools > Search Public Directory**.

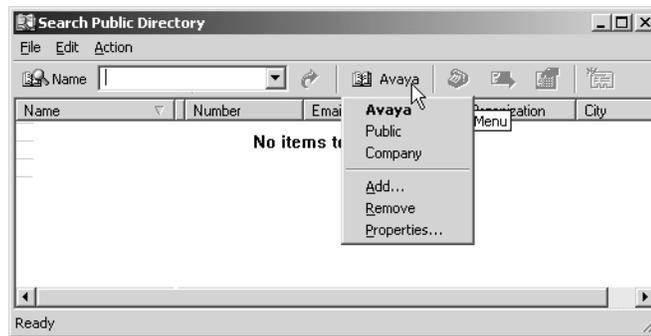
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Search Public Directory** dialog box.

Chapter 9: Using a Public Directory with Avaya IP Agent

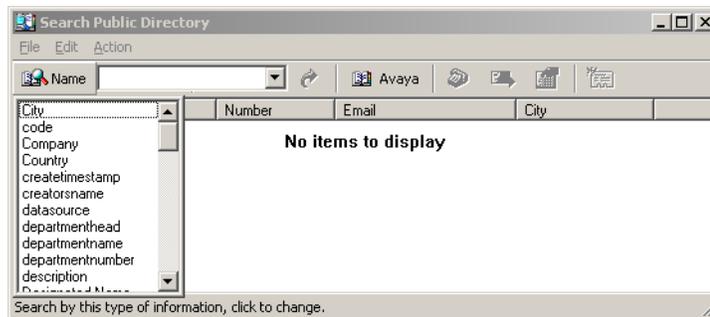
2. To select the Public Directory service to use, start by clicking the Directory Menu button.



Avaya IP Agent displays a menu listing all defined Public Directory services.



3. From the resulting list, select the Public Directory service that you will use.
The selected item from the menu is set as the active Public Directory service and the Directory Menu button displays its name.
4. Click the **Name** field to view a list of available fields defined in this Public Directory service.



Note:

If you have not connected previously to the Public Directory service, you must first run a query with the default settings. After this first query, all defined fields of the service will be available.

5. Select the field through which you want to conduct your search. The data field that you select appears as the label.

- In the field to the right of the label, enter a string to search for within the selected data field and press the Enter key.

Avaya IP Agent sends the query to the Public Directory service, receives the data, and displays it in the **Search Public Directory** window.

Name	Number	Email	Organization	City
John Smith		jsmith@hootmail.com	hootmail.com	
John Smith		ljsmith@hootmail.com	hootmail.com	
John Smith		106015@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith	800-555-5050 x 3221	john.smith@charter.org	charter.org	Carlisle, CA
John Smith	800-555-5050 x 3221	John.Smith@bigfeet.com	bigfeet.com	Carlisle, WA
John Smith	800-555-5050 x 3221	jsmith@try.com	try.com	Carlisle, TN
John Smith		John_Smith@tmail.com	tmail.com	
John Smith		thunder@sonic.org	sonic.org	
John Smith	400-555-9974 (FAX) 10-850	pan@DGRA.COM	DGRA.COM	
John Smith		stale@a1.ornl.gov	a1.ornl.gov	
John Smith		ale@desi.net	desi.net	
John Smith		71625@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith		10424@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith		10067@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith		10053@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith		10001@omp.com	omp.com	
John Smith		stan@a1.ornl.gov	a1.ornl.gov	
John Smith	+1 555-555-6087	stay_p@lan.gov	lan.gov	

For example, after setting the data type to **Name**, enter `Smith` in the field and press the Enter key.



Tip:

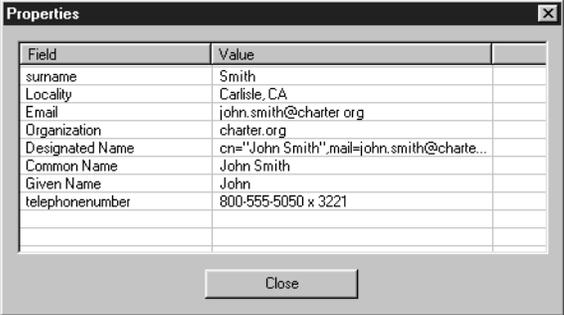
You can use an asterisk as a wildcard for a string. For example, entering the string, `j*n`, returns all names beginning with a `J` and ending with an `N` with one or more characters in between. This could include entries such as `John`, but also entries such as `Joseph Brown`.

- Right-click on an entry in the set of resulting data.

Avaya IP Agent displays a pop-up menu for the entry.



8. Select an action from the following table:

If...	Then...																		
You want Avaya IP Agent to dial the number listed for the selected entry	<p>Select Call: Name.</p> <p>If you have configured Avaya IP Agent to have multiple telephone numbers for each entry, another pop-up menu is displayed with this list of numbers. From this second list, select the number you want to call.</p>																		
You want to compose an e-mail to the address associated with the selected entry	Select Send Email .																		
You want to view all available data for the selected entry	<p>Select Properties.</p> <p>Avaya IP Agent displays the Properties dialog box.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Properties" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains a table with two columns: "Field" and "Value". The data in the table is as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>surname</td> <td>Smith</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Locality</td> <td>Carlisle, CA</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Email</td> <td>john.smith@charter.org</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Organization</td> <td>charter.org</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Designated Name</td> <td>cn="John Smith",mail=john.smith@charte...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Common Name</td> <td>John Smith</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Given Name</td> <td>John</td> </tr> <tr> <td>telephonenumber</td> <td>800-555-5050 x 3221</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom of the dialog box is a "Close" button.</p>	Field	Value	surname	Smith	Locality	Carlisle, CA	Email	john.smith@charter.org	Organization	charter.org	Designated Name	cn="John Smith",mail=john.smith@charte...	Common Name	John Smith	Given Name	John	telephonenumber	800-555-5050 x 3221
Field	Value																		
surname	Smith																		
Locality	Carlisle, CA																		
Email	john.smith@charter.org																		
Organization	charter.org																		
Designated Name	cn="John Smith",mail=john.smith@charte...																		
Common Name	John Smith																		
Given Name	John																		
telephonenumber	800-555-5050 x 3221																		
You want to add this entry to your Avaya IP Agent Contact Directory	<p>Select Add to Directory.</p> <p>Avaya IP Agent adds the name, telephone number, and e-mail address for this selection in the Contact Directory.</p>																		

Selecting the fields to display and the order

Avaya IP Agent allows you to select which fields from the Public Directory service will be displayed in the **Search Public Directory** window.

Steps for displaying Public Directory fields

To configure which Public Directory fields will be displayed in the **Search Public Directory** window after a query and in which order they will be displayed:

1. From the main window menu bar, select **Tools > Search Public Directory**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Search Public Directory** window.
2. From the menu bar of the **Search Public Directory** window, select **Edit > Field Organizer...**

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Field Organizer** window.



Note:

If the **Field Organizer** window does not contain any fields, you might need to first run a query of the Public Directory service with the default settings so that the list of available fields can be retrieved.

3. In the **Available Fields** list box, highlight the field you want to add to the **Search Public Directory** window.
You can highlight multiple fields in this list box by holding down the **Ctrl** key and clicking the cursor on each field name.
4. After the necessary fields have been highlighted, select the right arrow button (>) to move the selected fields to the **Show fields in this order** list box.
The left arrow button (<) will remove the highlighted field from the **Show fields in this order** list box.
The double arrow buttons (<< and >>) will move *all* fields from one list box to the other.
5. To change the order of the fields in the **Show fields in this order** list box, highlight the field to move by clicking on it.
6. Use the up and down buttons at the bottom of the list box to move the position of the highlighted field.

7. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 for the pertinent fields to set the desired order.
8. Select the **OK** button.

Note:

The selected fields and the associated order will not be displayed until you run a new query.

Identifying multiple telephone number fields

Avaya IP Agent allows you to select multiple fields to be considered as telephone numbers. For example, the Public Directory service could have several numbers assigned to an individual, such as pager, fax, voice mail, mobile telephone, home telephone, and so forth.

When multiple telephone numbers are identified in Avaya IP Agent, the *Call* feature of the **Search Public Directory** window will ask you to select which of these numbers you want to call.

Steps for identifying telephone number fields

To select multiple telephone numbers to be available for the *Call* feature, perform the following steps:

1. From the main window menu bar, select **Tools > Search Public Directory**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Search Public Directory** window.
2. From the **Search Public Directory** window menu bar, select **Edit > Select Phone Numbers...**

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Select Phone Numbers** window.



3. In the **Available Fields** list box, highlight the field you want to add as another telephone number for the contact.
You can highlight multiple fields in this list box by holding down the **Ctrl** key and clicking the cursor on each field name.
4. After the necessary fields have been highlighted, select the right arrow button (>) to move the selected fields to the **Phone Number Fields** list box.
5. Select the **OK** button.

Deleting a Public Directory service

This section provides the procedure for deleting a Public Directory service from Avaya IP Agent.

Steps for deleting a Public Directory service

To delete a Public Directory service, perform the following steps:

1. From the main window menu bar, select **Tools > Search Public Directory**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Search Public Directory** window.
2. To select the Public Directory service to delete, click the **Directory Menu** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays a menu listing all defined Public Directory services.
3. Select the Public Directory service from the **Directory Menu**.
The selected item from the menu is set as the active Public Directory service and the **Directory Menu** button displays its name.
4. Once again, click the **Directory Menu** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays **Directory Menu**.
5. From the **Directory Menu**, select **Remove**.
Avaya IP Agent deletes the active Public Directory service from Avaya IP Agent and sets the first remaining service as active.

Chapter 10: Screen pops

Screen pops are used to start an application or interface when an incoming call is received by Avaya IP Agent or when an outgoing call is placed.

Screen pops are most useful for the following actions:

- Starting an application so that the agent can enter customer or critical information regarding the call.
- Viewing data based on information transmitted with the call, such as customer information, the area from which they are calling, or the selections a customer made while being processed through a vector.

There are two types of screen pops:

- *Windows application* - This type of screen pop starts a Windows application, such as an HTML browser, a database interface, a trouble ticket program, or a custom application. This type of screen pop is also capable of passing parameters as part of an HTML string when it is initialized.
- *Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)* - This type of screen pop retrieves information you specify from a call and passes it to a DDE server or application. The DDE server or application can then send information from its database or a file to an interface displayed on the personal computer.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Creating a Windows application screen pop](#) on page 192
- [Creating a DDE screen pop](#) on page 197
- [Setting the active screen pop](#) on page 201
- [Modifying a screen pop](#) on page 202
- [Deleting a screen pop](#) on page 203

Before you begin

Read and understand the following items before administering screen pops through Avaya IP Agent:

- Many DDE services have distinct features. For this reason, the complete syntax for a DDE query cannot be specified in this document. For information regarding your DDE service and how to query information from it, refer to the documentation supplied with that product.

- User-to-User Information (UII) is a unique identifier that is added to an incoming call through an external application, such as Avaya ASAI. To pass UII, the Avaya communication server must have the **Display UII Information** feature enabled. Additionally, the UII feature does not support user-defined languages. This feature is only available for *incoming* calls, and it requires that a `uui-info` button is administered for the extension receiving the call.

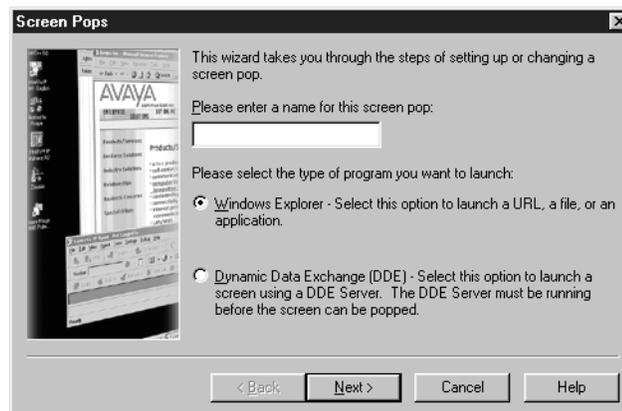
Creating a Windows application screen pop

This section provides the procedure for starting a Windows application when Avaya IP Agent receives an incoming call or an outgoing call is made.

Steps for creating an application screen pop

To create a Windows screen pop:

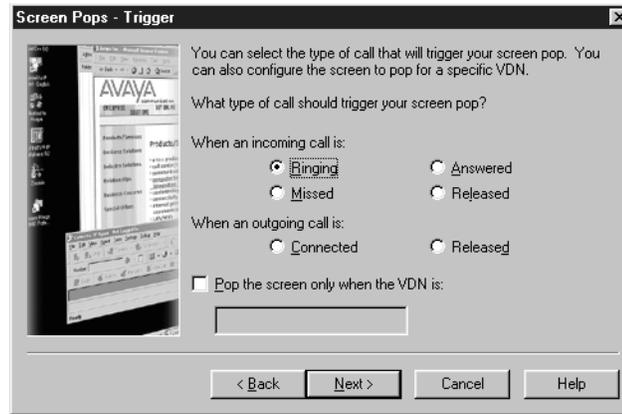
1. From the menu bar of the Avaya IP Agent window, select **Tools > Screen Pops**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops** window.
2. Select **File > New**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops** wizard.



3. Enter a name for this screen pop in the text box.
4. Ensure that the **Window Explorer** option button is selected.

5. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops - Trigger** window.



6. Select the appropriate call condition from the following table:

If...	Then...
<p>This screen pop should be run for incoming calls</p>	<p>Select one of the following options to indicate when it should start:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ringing - The screen pop starts when Avaya IP Agent receives an incoming call. ● Answered - The screen pop starts when an incoming call has been answered through the Avaya IP Agent interface or by picking up the handset in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration. ● Missed - The screen pop starts when the call appearance from an incoming call disappears after not being answered. This can be caused by the caller hanging up or if the call was routed to a voice mail system after a specific number of rings. ● Released - The screen pop starts when the Release button is pressed on a Call Information Panel (CIP) or when the agent hangs up the telephone in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration.
<p>This screen pop should be run for outgoing calls</p>	<p>Select one of the following options to indicate when it should start:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connected - The screen pop starts when the party being called answers the telephone. ● Released - The Screen Pop starts when the Release button is pressed on a CIP or when the agents hangs up the telephone in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration.

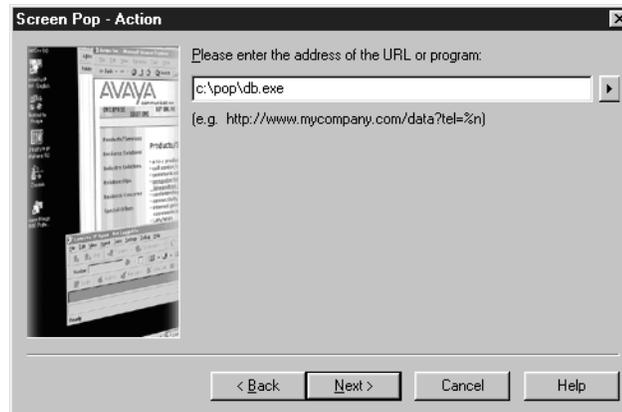
7. If you want the screen pop to start when an incoming call appears on a specific VDN:
- a. Place a check mark in the **Pop the screen only when the VDN is** check box.
 - b. In the associated field, enter the VDN name (up to 15 characters) that will cause this screen pop to run.

! Important:

If, through Communication Manager, you assign VDN names with more than 15 characters, you may encounter a situation where your screen pop may match multiple VDN names. To avoid this situation, you should not create VDN names longer than 15 characters.

8. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pop - Action** window.



9. In the field provided, enter one of the following items:

- *A Uniform Resource Locator (URL) address* - This refers to a Web page. This could also include CGI scripts, java scripts, or many other Web-enabled tools.
- *A filename* - This can be any filename with an extension specified in the Windows Registry as having an associated application that is used to open it, for example, .HTM, .DOC, and .TXT. If a filename is specified that does not have a valid application association in the Registry, Windows will display an error message.

Note:

If you enter a program name in the action field, be certain to enclose the program name in quotation marks. Failure to include the quotes may cause the screen pop to fail. For example:

"C:\Program Files\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Notepad.exe"

10. Calls contain information that can also be included in this field as parameters of a URL address string. To include call information parameters with a URL string, select the arrow to the right of the field to display the **Insert Call Data** menu.

The information that may be available for retrieval from a call are:

- **Called/Caller Name (%n)** - Passes the name of the other party on the call, if available
- **Called/Caller Number (%m)** - Passes the telephone number of the other party on the call, if available

- **Prompted Digits (%p)** - Passes the digits the caller selected while being processed through a vector, if available
- **VDN (%v)** - Passes the VDN name through which the call was connected
- **UUI (%u)** - Passes User-to-User-Information that was collected by the Avaya communication server from a centralized application
- **Start Time (%s)** - Passes the time when the telephone call was received by Avaya IP Agent
- **End Time (%e)** - Passes the time when the telephone call was terminated.
- **Date (%d)** - Passes the current date when the telephone call is received by Avaya IP Agent

You may also specify these parameters manually within the URL address string.

11. After entering the URL address or filename, select the **Next** button.
12. If you specified any parameters to be used in the **Action** window, you are presented with the **Format Call Information** window for each parameter. In this window, you can specify the number of characters or digits used for that parameter in the screen pop.

If you want to limit the number of characters presented for each parameter, do the following steps:

- a. Enable the check box on the specific parameter screen.
- b. Use the **Number of characters to include** and **Location** fields to adjust the boundaries of the string.
- c. After you have specified the boundaries of the parameter string, select the **Next** button.

If more than one parameter was specified in the **Action** dialog box earlier, the **Format Call Information** for the next parameter is presented. Select the **Next** button when you have finished configuring each parameter.

If there are no more parameters to configure, Avaya IP Agent displays the **Testing** dialog box.

13. Select the **Test** button to verify that the configuration of this screen pop works as intended.

If you are using parameters in your screen pop, you will be presented with another dialog box that allows you to enter **Caller Name**, **Caller Number**, **Prompted Digits**, **VDN**, and **UUI** as test information. Select the **Continue** button when all necessary test information has been entered in these fields.

Avaya IP Agent starts the screen pop.

14. After you have confirmed that the test of the screen pop was successful, close the screen pop and select the **Next** button on the **Testing** window.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Setup Completed** window.

15. Select the **Finish** button.

Avaya IP Agent saves this screen pop and displays it in the **Screen Pops** window.

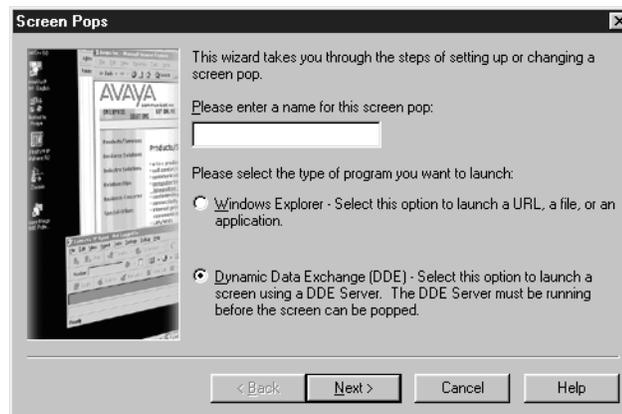
Creating a DDE screen pop

This section provides the procedure for starting a DDE screen pop when Avaya IP Agent receives an incoming call or when an outgoing call is made.

Steps for creating a DDE screen pop

To create a DDE screen pop:

1. From the menu bar of the Avaya IP Agent window, select **Tools > Screen Pops**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops** window.
2. Select **File > New**.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops** wizard.



3. Select the **Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)** option button.
4. Select the **Next** button.
Avaya IP Agent displays the **Screen Pops - Trigger** window.

5. Select the appropriate call condition from the following table:

If...	Then...
<p>This screen pop should be run for incoming calls</p>	<p>Select one of the following options to indicate when it should start:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ring - The screen pop starts when Avaya IP Agent receives an incoming call. ● Answered - The screen pop starts when an incoming call has been answered through the Avaya IP Agent interface or by picking up the handset in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration. ● Missed - The screen pop starts when the call appearance from an incoming call disappears after not being answered. This can be caused by the caller hanging up or if the call was routed to a voice mail system after a specific number of rings. ● Released - The screen pop start when the Release button is pressed on a Call Information Panel (CIP) or when the agent hangs up the telephone in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration.
<p>This screen pop should be run for outgoing calls</p>	<p>Select one of the following options to indicate when it should start:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connected - The screen pop starts when the party being called answers the telephone. ● Released - The screen pop starts when the Release button is pressed on a CIP or when the agent hangs up the telephone in the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configuration.

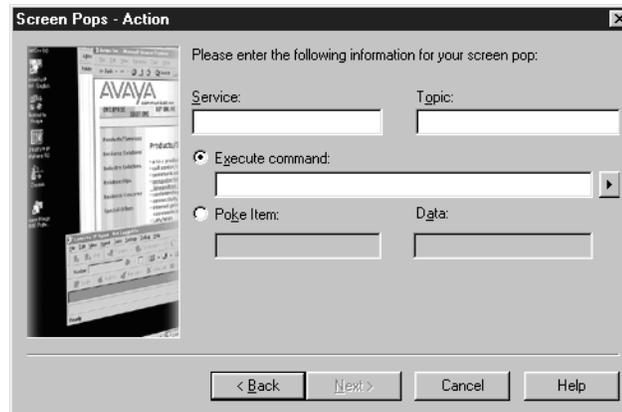
6. If you want the screen pop to start when an incoming calls appears on a specific VDN:
- a. Place a check mark in the **Pop the screen only when the VDN is** check box.
 - b. In the associated field, enter the VDN name (up to 15 characters) that will cause this screen pop to run.

! Important:

If, through Communication Manager, you assign VDN names with more than 15 characters, you may encounter a situation where your screen pop may match multiple VDN names. To avoid this situation, you should not create VDN names longer than 15 characters.

7. Select the **Next** button.

Avaya IP Agent displays the **Action** window.



8. In the **Action** window, enter the necessary DDE information for the following fields:

- **Service** - A string expression that identifies an application or DDE server that can participate in a DDE conversation. Usually, the application argument is the file name of a program for a Windows-based application. Do not specify the .EXE extension of the program.
- **Topic** - A string expression that is the name of a topic recognized by the application argument. This will be the second parameter of the DDEInitiate() function.

! Important:

Many DDE services have distinct features. For this reason, complete syntax for a DDE query cannot be specified in this document. For information regarding your DDE service, refer to the documentation supplied with that product.

9. Select which option will be used for the DDE conversation from the following list:

- **Execute command** - A string expression that specifies a command recognized by the server application. The string will only be changed to input caller information. The syntax must match the syntax required by the DDE program. For example, if embedded quotes are necessary, such as "name=""Smith""", you must enter the text string with all required quotation marks.

- **Poke Item** - A string expression that is the name of a data item recognized by the topic specified by the DDE Initiate() function.

Data - A string containing the data to be supplied to the other application.

10. Enter the appropriate information in the fields for the selected option. Use the arrow button to the right of the **Execute command** or **Data** fields to specify information for Avaya IP Agent to retrieve from the telephone call and pass to the DDE conversation.

The information that may be available for retrieval from a call are:

- **Called/Caller Name (%n)** - Passes the name of the other party on the call, if available
- **Called/Caller Number (%m)** - Passes the telephone number of the other party on the call, if available
- **Prompted Digits (%p)** - Passes the digits the caller selected while being processed through a vector, if available.
- **VDN (%v)** - Passes the VDN name through which the call was connected
- **UUI (%u)** - Passes User-to-User-Information that was collected by the Avaya communication server from a centralized application.
- **Start Time (%s)** - Passes the time when the telephone call was received by Avaya IP Agent
- **End Time (%e)** - Passes the time when the telephone call was terminated.
- **Date (%d)** - Passes the current date when the telephone call is received by Avaya IP Agent

You may also specify these parameters manually within the string.

11. If you specified any parameters to be used in the **Action** window, you are presented with the **Format Call Information** window for each parameter. In this dialog box, you can specify the number of characters or digits used for that parameter in the screen pop.

If you want to limit the number of characters presented for each parameter, do the following steps:

- a. Enable the check box on the specific parameter screen
- b. Use the **Number of characters to include** and **Location** fields to adjust the boundaries of the string.
- c. After you have specified the boundaries of the parameter string, select the **Next** button.

If more than one parameter was specified in the **Action** window earlier, the **Format Call Information** window for the next parameter is presented. Select the **Next** button when you have finished configuring each parameter.

If there are no more parameters, Avaya IP Agent displays the **Testing** window.

Chapter 10: Screen pops

4. Close the **Screen Pops** window.

Chapter 11: Dialog Reference

This section provides descriptions of the graphical interfaces used in Avaya IP Agent and their basic functionality. Only those interfaces not described through other sections of this document are described here.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Main window and menus](#) on page 205
- [Avaya IP Agent option dialogs](#) on page 222
- [Login Settings dialog box](#) on page 240
- [Instant Messaging settings](#) on page 247
- [Agent Greetings settings](#) on page 252
- [Audio settings](#) on page 257

Main window and menus

This section describes the menus and panels in the Avaya IP Agent main window.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Menu bar](#) on page 205
- [Toolbars](#) on page 215
- [Information panels](#) on page 220
- [System Tray icon](#) on page 221

Menu bar

The Avaya IP Agent main window provides full-function, multi-line telephony support on your personal computer. This window is also used to access all the features found in Avaya IP Agent.

This section defines all of the items available in the Avaya IP Agent menus. Some menu and menu items are available only when they are valid for your current configuration. For example, the **Call** menu is not available in an IP Endpoint configuration when a call is not currently active. Other menus, menu items, and buttons on the interface will be disabled when the associated functionality cannot be used because of configuration, call instance, or agent work mode.

Chapter 11: Dialog Reference

This section contains the following topics:

- [File menu](#) on page 206
- [Edit menu](#) on page 208
- [Call menu](#) on page 208
- [View menu](#) on page 209
- [Agent menu](#) on page 211
- [Tools menu](#) on page 212
- [Audio menu](#) on page 213
- [Settings menu](#) on page 214
- [Instant Messaging menu](#) on page 214
- [Help menu](#) on page 215

File menu



The following items are available on the **File** menu:

- **Station Login, Station Logout** - These items appear as the first item in this menu. They are used for logging the station or agent in and out of the Avaya communication server. This menu item varies between these two possibilities depending on your current login state. These items do not appear for Avaya Callmaster VI configurations.
- **Import Settings** - Selecting this menu item gives you the ability to open a file containing settings from another Avaya IP Agent installation and apply those settings to this installation.
- **Export Settings** - Selecting this menu item saves the settings from this installation of Avaya IP Agent to a file. This file can then be re-imported to this personal computer or to another personal computer with Avaya IP Agent.

Note:

When exporting and importing settings, most name changes to features in the **Phone Features** or **Personal Phone Features** windows are made on a per extension basis. To ensure that name changes are made for all extensions, right-click on the feature and select the **Rename (All Extensions)** item from the resulting menu.

Exported settings are platform-dependent. If you export Avaya IP Agent settings from a Windows XP personal computer, do not import the settings to a personal computer that uses a different operating system.

Imported and exported files include the following settings:

- All settings available in the **Program Options** window
- Screen pops
- Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) settings
- Personal Phone features
- Phone features
- Abbreviated Dialing settings
- Call Center features
- Telephone button labels
- Audio settings
- Speed-dial settings
- **Configuration Admin...** - Selecting this item begins the Configuration Administration process. The contact center system administrator can use this process to define IP Agent Program Options features and restrictions in a *.reg registry file. The *.reg file can then be used to push IP Agent configurations to other PCs.

The Configuration Admin dialog is described in [Configuring an IP Agent *.reg file with Configuration Administration](#) on page 92.

Note:

This menu item is available only to users with Feature Access privileges for Configuration Admin. The default is "disable access."

- **Exit** - Selecting this menu item closes Avaya IP Agent after making the necessary logouts for the agent and the extension.

Edit menu



The following items are available on the **Edit** menu:

- **Cut** - Removes any highlighted text in the **Number** field and places it on the Windows clipboard.
- **Copy** - Copies any highlighted text in the **Number** field and places it on the Windows clipboard.
- **Paste** - Retrieves the last item placed on the Windows clipboard and places it in the **Number** field.

Call menu



The **Call** menu is available only when a call is made or received.

The following items are available on the **Call** menu:

- **Release** - Terminates an active call.
- **Drop** - Disconnects from a call without requiring you to hang up the handset, turn off the speakerphone, or press the switch hook.



Important:

6400-series telephones must have a Drop button administered on the Avaya communication server in order for the Drop feature in the Avaya IP Agent window or menus to function properly.

- **Hold** - Places a call on hold until you can return to it. While the call is on hold, you can place another call, activate a feature, or answer another call.
- **Transfer** - Sends a call from your extension to another extension or outside number. Use this feature when the other party on the call needs to speak with someone else. There are three different types of transfers available.

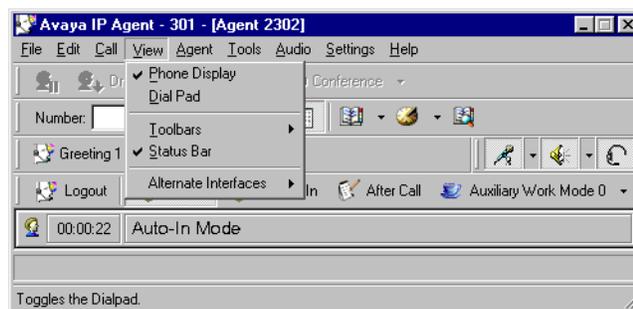
The following types of call transfers are available with Avaya IP Agent:

- **Basic Transfer** - Select **Transfer**, dial the number on the keyboard or the **Dial Pad**, announce the call, and select **Transfer** again.
- **Unsupervised Transfer** - Select **Transfer**, enter the number to be called in the displayed dialog box, and select the **OK** button to transfer the call. You are not able to talk to the party receiving the transferred call with this type of transfer.
- **Enhanced Transfer** - Select **Transfer**, enter the number to be called in the displayed dialog, and select **OK**. You can announce the call and then, in the displayed message box, select **OK** to complete the transfer or **Cancel** to abort the transfer.
- **Conference** - Adds other parties to a call. There are two different types of conferences available.

The following types of call conferencing are available with Avaya IP Agent:

- **Basic Conference** - Select **Conference** which displays another call appearance. Dial the number of the party to add to the conference through the keyboard or the **Dial Pad**, announce the conference to the new party, and select **Conference** again to add the new party.
- **Enhanced Conference** - Select **Conference** which displays a dialog box. Enter the number to call in the appropriate field, and select the **OK** button. After you announce the conference to the new party, select the **Yes** button in the resulting message box to add the new party.

View menu



The following items are available on the **View** menu:

- **Phone Display** - Enabling this item displays a panel above the status bar. This panel can display information from sources such as VuStats or call-prompting digits.

- **Dial Pad** - Enabling this item displays a **Dial Pad** window, which contains a series of numbers and symbols resembling a telephone keypad. Use your mouse to dial numbers on the **Dial Pad**.



- **Toolbars > Show Labels** - Enabling this item displays labels for the buttons on the [Phone buttons toolbar](#), the [Agent toolbar](#), and the [Phone features toolbar](#).
- **Toolbars > Phone Buttons** - Enabling this item displays the [Phone buttons toolbar](#), which contains buttons for the Drop, Transfer, Conference, and Hold functions.
- **Toolbars > Dial Number** - Enabling this item displays the [Dial Number toolbar](#), which provides a field for entering digits. It also contains the buttons used to access the Contact History feature, the Contact Directory feature, the **Dial Pad**, and the Search Public Directory feature.
- **Toolbars > Audio Control** - Enabling this item displays the [Audio Control toolbar](#). Using this toolbar, the user can enable or disable audio transmission, audio receiving, and the headset. This toolbar is only available for Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations.
- **Toolbars > Agent** - Enabling this item displays the [Agent toolbar](#), which an agent can use to change their work modes. It also contains a **Login/Logout** button for agents.
- **Toolbars > Phone Features** - Enabling this item displays the [Phone features toolbar](#), which is populated with previously selected folders from the **Phone Features** window. When you select a folder on this toolbar, a list is displayed with all of the available features that are currently assigned to that folder.
- **Toolbars > Feature Buttons** - Enabling this item displays the [Feature button toolbar](#), which is populated with previously selected buttons from the **Phone Features** window. Buttons on this toolbar have an associated lamp that identifies the status of the feature the button represents.
- **Toolbars > Agent Greetings** - Enabling this item displays the [Agent greetings toolbar](#), which is used to select, play, and stop agent greetings that have been previously recorded. This toolbar is available only for the Road Warrior (VoIP) and Avaya Callmaster VI configurations.
- **Toolbars > Headset** - Enabling this item displays the [Headset toolbar](#), which contains a button for answering a call or creating a new call appearance when a call is not currently active.
- **Toolbars > Instant Messaging** - Enabling this item displays the [Instant Messaging toolbar](#), which contains buttons for changing your presence state and initiating an instant messaging to another Avaya IP Agent user.

- **Toolbars > Launch** - Enabling this item displays up to 23 applications that can be launched from IP Agent.
- **Toolbars > Configure Launch Toolbar...** - Selecting this item opens the Configure Launch Toolbar dialog. This dialog is described in [Configuring the Launch toolbar](#) on page 87.
- **Status Bar** - Enabling this item displays the Status Bar at the bottom of the Avaya IP Agent main window. The Status Bar displays different types of information, such as current activity, notification of voice messages, the state of Avaya IP Agent, and tool tips.
- **Alternate Interfaces** - This menu item lists all alternate user interfaces that have been installed with Avaya IP Agent. The alternate user interfaces use much less desktop space than the default interface. See [Using alternate user interfaces](#) on page 127 for more information.

Agent menu



The following items are available on the **Agent** menu:

- **Agent Login** - This item displays the **Agent Login** dialog box for entering your EAS Agent login ID number and password.
- **Agent Logout** - This item enables you to log out so that calls are not routed to this extension.
- **Auto-In Mode** - This is an Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) work mode. Agents in the Auto-In mode are available to receive new calls upon completion of the current call.
- **Manual-In Mode** - This is an ACD work mode. Agents must use the Manual-In feature to re-enter the AVAIL (Available) work mode from the AUX (Auxiliary Work) work or the ACW (After Call Work) work mode.
- **After Call Work (ACW)** - This is an ACD work mode that indicates that an agent is performing tasks related to the last call.
- **Auxiliary Work Mode (AUX)** - This is an ACD work mode that indicates that an agent is not available to receive an ACD call. Depending on how the ACD is administered, the AUX work mode can require that agents provide a reason code before the work mode can be assigned. Multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with different reason codes can be assigned to an extension.

- **Assist** - This item initiates a request for assistance from a skill supervisor.

Tools menu



The following items are available on the **Tools** menu:

- **Phone Features** - Selecting this item displays the **Phone Features** window which, lists the feature buttons that have been assigned to this extension.
- **Personal Phone Features** - Selecting this item displays the **Personal Phone Features** window, which is used to create a smaller list of phone features that are used often or for ease of access.
- **Contact History** - Selecting this item displays the **Contact History** window, which displays a log of all calls received by this extension and instant message conversations for this SIP Enablement Services user ID. This log includes name, number, date, time, duration, notes, and can be used to access a transcript of an instant message conversation.
- **Contacts** - Selecting this item displays the **Contacts** or **Contacts Directory** window. The **Contacts** window is a simple display where contacts are listed and displayed by user-defined groups. The **Contacts Directory** window is a more detailed view of your contacts, which displays information such as addresses, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, and other information. You can switch between these views by selecting the appropriate option under the **View** menu of the respective windows. See [Using the Contact Directory](#) on page 149 for more information.
- **Speed Dial Numbers** - Selecting this item displays the **Speed Dial Numbers** window. The **Speed Dial Numbers** window allows you to create a Speed Dial telephone number that does not exist in the Contact Directory. Once you create a Speed Dial telephone number with this method, this new entry is added to the Contact Directory and can be edited the same as other entries. See [Administering Speed Dial from the Speed Dial Numbers window](#) on page 158 for more information.
- **Search Public Directory** - Selecting this item displays the **Search Public Directory** window, which allows you to search Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) servers by any field defined in the public directory. See [Using a Public Directory with Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 181 for more information.

- **Screen Pops** - Selecting this item displays the **Screen Pops** window, which lists all the screen pops that are defined on this personal computer. See [Screen pops](#) on page 191 for more information.
- **Agent Greetings** - Selecting this item displays the **Agent Greetings** window, which lists all of the agent greetings that are defined on this personal computer. Agents, with the proper access permissions, can manage the greetings from this window. See [Agent Greetings](#) on page 171 for more information.
- **VuStats Monitor** - Selecting this item displays the **VuStats Monitor** window, which is used to view the VuStats information being sent to this extension. See [Using VuStats](#) on page 177 for more information.
- **Program Options** - Selecting this item displays the **Program Options** dialog box for Avaya IP Agent. See [Avaya IP Agent option dialogs](#) on page 222 for more information.

Audio menu

Note:

The **Audio** menu is not available for Callmaster VI configurations.



The following items are available on the **Audio** menu:

- **Volume and Ringer Settings** - Selecting this item displays the **Volume and Ringer Settings** dialog box. Through this dialog box, you can adjust the volume for your speakers, microphone, and ringer. You can also mute all sound devices and control other options.
- **Audio Options** - Selecting this item displays the **Audio Options** dialog box through which you can adjust the settings for IP audio, such as bandwidth and gain levels. This item is only available for Road Warrior configurations.
- **Audio Monitor** - Selecting this item displays the **Audio Monitor** dialog box, which displays the audio levels currently used for your microphone and speakers. This window also displays information for your VoIP connection. This item is only available for Road Warrior configurations.
- **Tuning Wizard** - Selecting this item runs the **Tuning Wizard**, which queries the personal computer for the optimal settings for Voice-over-IP and playing agent greetings. This item is only available for Road Warrior and Telecommuter configurations.

Note:

Access to **Audio Options**, **Audio Options**, and **Tuning Wizard** menu items can be restricted using the **Tools > Program Options > Feature Access** option, and selecting the **Disable Access - Restrict the user from accessing this feature** checkbox for each feature. Restricting access to the Audio Tuning Wizard does not affect the situation where iClarity determines that a tuning session must be performed.

Settings menu

Note:

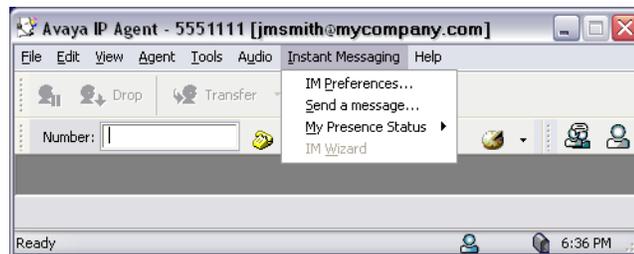
The **Settings** menu is displayed only for Callmaster VI configurations



The following items are available on the **Settings** menu:

- **Phone Configuration** - Selecting this item downloads the PASTE data from the Avaya communication server to the Avaya Callmaster VI unit.

Instant Messaging menu

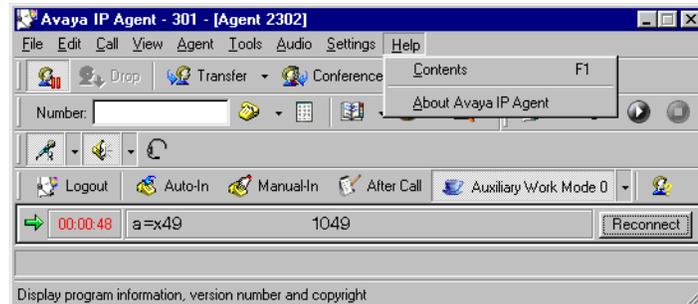


The following items are available on the Instant Messaging menu:

- **IM Preferences** - Selecting this item displays a dialog box that allows you to adjust many instant messaging aspects, such as notification alerts, privacy, and history.
- **Send a message** - Selecting this item displays a dialog box that allows you to enter the instant messaging address. After you have entered an address, you can send an instant message to that user.

- **My Presence Status**- Selecting this item allows you to change your instant messaging presence state to one of those appearing in the subsequent menu.
- **IM Wizard** - Selecting this option displays the **Instant Messaging Setup Wizard**, which allows you to configure the Instant Messaging feature. You can only select this item if you are not currently logged in to SIP Enablement Services.

Help menu



The following items are available on the **Help** menu:

- **Contents** - Selecting this item displays the table of contents for Avaya IP Agent online help.
- **About Avaya IP Agent** - Selecting this item displays the **About** dialog box which provides product information for Avaya IP Agent.

Toolbars

This section provides descriptions and additional information on the toolbars of the Avaya IP Agent window. Toolbars contain buttons that provide quick access to specific commands and tools. Toolbars can be added or removed from the main window by selecting each one in the [View menu](#) on page 209.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Toolbar locations](#) on page 216
- [Phone buttons toolbar](#) on page 216
- [Dial Number toolbar](#) on page 216
- [Agent toolbar](#) on page 217
- [Agent greetings toolbar](#) on page 217
- [Phone features toolbar](#) on page 218
- [Feature button toolbar](#) on page 218

- [Audio Control toolbar](#) on page 218
- [Headset toolbar](#) on page 219
- [Instant Messaging toolbar](#) on page 219
- [Callmaster toolbar](#) on page 219

Toolbar locations

Each toolbar can be moved to any location in the main window.

To move a toolbar:

1. Move the mouse pointer on the far-left side of the toolbar until the mouse pointer changes its appearance to the resizing icon.
2. Click and hold the left mouse button.
3. Drag the toolbar to the necessary location. The toolbar will change positions as you move it over different areas of the main window.
4. When the toolbar is correctly positioned in its new location, release the left mouse button.

Phone buttons toolbar



The Phone buttons toolbar provides quick access to the basic phone buttons: **Hold**, **Drop**, **Transfer**, and **Conference**.

The **Transfer** and **Conference** buttons provide drop-down lists that allow the agent to select the type of transfer or conference to make.

Dial Number toolbar



The Dial Number toolbar contains the **Number** field for entering telephone numbers to dial.

Additionally, this field can be used to enter the first characters of a name from the **Contact Directory**. If the first character of the string entered in this field is a letter, the title of the field will be changed from **Number** to **Name**. When you enter a partial name in this field and press the **Enter** key or click the telephone button on the right side of the field, a list is displayed with all entries in the **Contact Directory** that match the string of characters.

For example, entering **sm** in the field and pressing the **Enter** key could display a pop-up menu with the following entries in the **Contact Directory**:



This field will search for entries only in the **Contact Directory**. It cannot be used to search a public directory (LDAP).

This toolbar also contains the following features that you can access with a single click:

- **Dial Pad** window
- **Contacts/Contact Directory** window
- Speed Dial drop-down list
- **Speed Dial Numbers** window
- **Contact History** window
- Recent call drop-down list
- **Search Public Directory** window

Agent toolbar

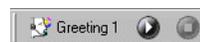


The Agent toolbar provides buttons for agent login and logout, as well as agent work modes for Avaya communication servers with Expert Agent Selection (EAS).

Note:

If multiple Auxiliary Work buttons with differing reason codes are assigned to this extension, an arrow is displayed to the right of the **Aux Work** button. When you select this arrow, a menu that lists all of the Auxiliary Work reason codes is displayed. Select the appropriate reason code from this menu.

Agent greetings toolbar



The Agent greetings toolbar lets you select, play, and stop greetings. This toolbar is only available for Road Warrior (VoIP), Telecommuter (with Avaya Switcher II), and Avaya Callmaster VI configurations. For this toolbar to be available, you must be logged in as an agent and have the appropriate feature buttons assigned to this station. See [Configuring the Avaya communication server](#) on page 33 for more information on which buttons are necessary.

Phone features toolbar



The Phone features toolbar can display one or more folders from the **Phone Features** window. When you click a button in this toolbar, Avaya IP Agent displays a list of the items contained within the associated folder.

To display items on this toolbar, open the **Phone Features** window, right-click on the folder that you want to display, and select **Display on Toolbar**.

Note:
This toolbar can support a maximum of seven buttons.

Feature button toolbar



The Feature button toolbar can display one or more items from the **Phone Features** window.

To display items on this toolbar, open the **Phone Features** window, right-click on a feature that you want to display, and select **Display on Toolbar**.

Note:
This toolbar can support a maximum of seven buttons.

! Important:
During station administration, if you delete a Phone Feature button from the Feature button toolbar, the entire Feature button toolbar will be deleted. To rebuild the toolbar, choose **Tools > Phone Features** and select **File > Rebuild All** to refresh phone features and rebuild the Feature button toolbar, Phone feature toolbar, and Personal Phone Features.

Audio Control toolbar



The Audio Control toolbar allows control of the following items:

- Microphone status and volume
- Speaker status and volume
- Ringer status and volume control

This toolbar is only available for Road Warrior (VoIP) and Avaya Callmaster VI configurations.

Headset toolbar



The Headset toolbar contains a button used to toggle the headset or handset on and off hook.

Note:

If this station has been set as a 606A1 phone type on the Avaya communication server, this button may not function properly in the Telecommuter configuration.

Instant Messaging toolbar



The Instant Messaging toolbar contains the following controls:

- Start IM Session - Selecting this button to display a dialog box, in which you can enter the user name of another Instant Messaging user. After you had entered the user name, an **Instant Message Session** window is displayed.
- Presence - Select this button to display a popup menu, which allows you to change your instant messaging presence state.

Callmaster toolbar



Note:

This toolbar is only available for Callmaster VI configurations.

The Callmaster toolbar contains the following controls:

- Microphone - Select this button to mute the microphone on the Callmaster VI headset.
- Volume control - Select this button to display a slider control that allows you to adjust the volume of audio heard through the headset.
- Headset - Select this button to enable or disable the Callmaster VI headset.

Launch toolbar



The Launch toolbar contains the icons of up to 23 applications that can be launched from IP Agent. This toolbar is customizable by following the instructions in [Configuring the Launch toolbar](#) on page 87.

Information panels

This section contains descriptions and information on the areas of the main window that display information to the user.

There are three different types of panels in Avaya IP Agent, which are described in the following topics:

- [Call Information Panel](#) on page 220
- [Agent Information Panel](#) on page 220
- [Phone Display Panel](#) on page 220

Call Information Panel

Avaya IP Agent displays the Call Information Panel (CIP) only during incoming and outgoing calls. It provides information about the call, such as call status, call display, call duration. It also displays an **Answer/ Release/ Reconnect** button.

If a call is currently active and the other party is listed in the **Contact Directory**, that name is displayed in the CIP instead of the information passed from the ACD.

The call status, incoming, outgoing, or on-hold, is displayed in the first section. Right-click the CIP to display a pop-up menu containing available options for this call, such as hold, transfer, and conference.

The timer in this panel displays the amount of time that has elapsed for a call and the work done in a subsequent non-active work mode, such as ACW. When an agent enters Auto-In or Manual-In mode, the timer is reset to 0.

Note:

To disable the call timer, see [How to remove the call timer](#) on page 283.

Agent Information Panel

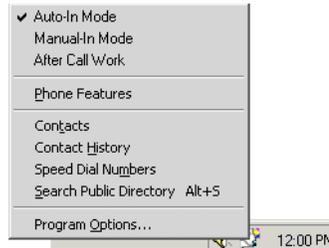
Avaya IP Agent displays the Agent Information Panel when agent status information is available and no calls are currently active. If you are logged in as an agent, the status information also includes the current agent work mode.

Phone Display Panel

The Phone Display Panel is a 40-character display that is located above the Status Bar. This display area is updated automatically with call-related and non-call-related information from the Avaya communication server, such as call-prompting digits, VuStats data, and the local date and time display from the ACD. Only those telephone types that are capable of displaying 80 characters are compatible with this feature. See [Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 24 for compatible telephone types.

System Tray icon

The Avaya IP Agent System Tray icon is an easy way to access commonly used features and to change your agent work mode.



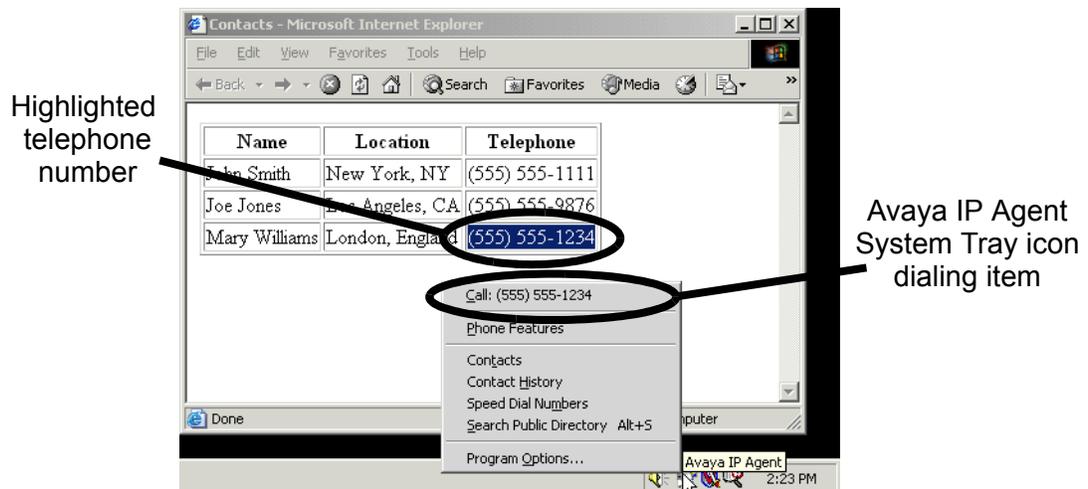
To display the System Tray icon menu, right-click the icon.

If you are not logged in as an agent, the work mode entries in this menu will not be displayed.

Placing calls through the System Tray icon

You can use two methods to place a call using the Avaya IP Agent System Tray icon:

- **Highlight dialing** - Highlight a telephone number in any application. Then, when you right-click the System Tray icon, selecting the item at the top of the menu will automatically dial the highlighted number.



- **Clipboard dialing** - If you highlight a telephone number, right-click the selection, and select **Copy**, that number is saved to the Windows clipboard. Then, if you right-click the Avaya IP Agent System Tray icon, the top item of the resulting pop-up menu will display the telephone number that you copied to the clipboard.

Both of these methods allow for calling telephone numbers with letters, such as 1-866-GO-AVAYA.

Call handling with the System Tray icon

The Avaya IP Agent System Tray icon can also be used to access common telephone functionality, such as placing a call on Hold.



To use the capability, you must be on a call when you right-click the System Tray icon.

Avaya IP Agent option dialogs

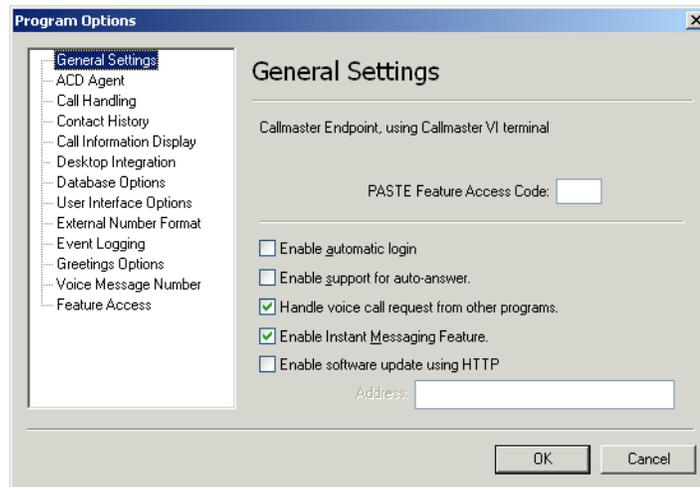
Use the **Program Options** dialog box to configure the many feature areas of Avaya IP Agent. Select **Tools > Program Options...** to display this dialog box.

This section contains descriptions for the following panels of the **Program Options** dialog box:

- [General Settings panel](#) on page 223
- [ACD Agent panel](#) on page 226
- [Call Handling panel](#) on page 227
- [Contact History panel](#) on page 228
- [Call Information Display panel](#) on page 229
- [Desktop Integration panel](#) on page 230
- [Database Options panel](#) on page 231
- [User Interface Options panel](#) on page 232
- [External Number Format panel](#) on page 233
- [Event Logging panel](#) on page 235
- [Greetings Options panel](#) on page 236
- [Voice Message Number panel](#) on page 237

- [Phone Settings panel](#) on page 238
- [Feature Access panel](#) on page 239

General Settings panel



The **General Settings** panel contains the following items:

- **PASTE Feature Access Code** - This feature is used for Avaya Callmaster VI configurations. Use this field to enter the PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE) code for an Avaya Callmaster VI unit. This code, which is found on the Avaya communication server, allows the Avaya Callmaster VI unit to translate information sent from the Avaya communication server and relay that information to Avaya IP Agent.
- **Enable automatic login** - This feature is only available for Road Warrior, Telecommuter, IP Telephone, and Avaya Telephone configurations. When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent attempts to register with the Avaya communication server when started. It will use the information that was last used for a successful registration with the Avaya communication server.
- **Enable support for auto-answer** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent automatically connects an incoming call without requiring the agent to pick up the handset or select the **Answer** or headset buttons on the main window. For this functionality, the auto-answer feature on the Avaya communication server must be assigned to this extension. After activating support for auto-answer, you must restart Avaya IP Agent.
- **Handle voice call request from other programs** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent intercepts requests from other applications on the personal computer to begin a call and functions as though the call was started through Avaya IP Agent.

- **Enable Instant Messaging Feature** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent allows you to register with SIP Enablement Services as an instant messaging user during the station login process.

Note:

If you upgraded IP Agent to R7 from IP Agent R6, and this check box was enabled in R6, you must re-enable the field in R7.

- **Enable software update using HTTP** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent reads the configuration file in the location specified in the **Address** field for program updates. The configuration file is a file that redirects Avaya IP Agent to the location of the current update. This file can be created in any ASCII text editor or you can use the configuration file provided on the Avaya IP Agent software download package. If an update for Avaya IP Agent is found, it is installed.



Important:

The Enable Software Update feature requires the active user's Microsoft Windows profile to have administration privileges.

The default filename is `IPAgentUpdateInfo.txt`. However, you may rename this file and enter the name of the new file in the **Address** field. This feature uses only Uniform Resource Locator (URL) or IP addresses that can communicate information by using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). The following example displays the format of the configuration file, including optional entries [Update] and [Report]:

```
[Update]
Version=7.0.4.57
PathToUpdate=http://myserver:80/setupfolderpath/setup.exe
```

```
[Update]
NewCfgAddress=http://myserver:80/newconfigfolderpath/IPAgentUpdateInfo.txt
```

```
[Report]
Address=http://myserver:80/reportfolderpath/report.asp
```

Note:

This feature does not support Universal Naming Convention (UNC) or local directory paths. For example, `\\servername\resource\filename` or `file:///c:\temp\filename` are not supported.

- The `Version` entry is mandatory. This entry specifies the version of the available update. Avaya IP Agent compares the current version of the application against the version listed in the configuration file. If the version in the configuration file is later than the version of Avaya IP Agent being used on the personal computer, Avaya IP Agent reads the location specified in the `PathToUpdate` entry.
- The `PathToUpdate` entry is optional. This entry specifies the URL or IP address where the Avaya IP Agent update is available. If a location is not specified in this entry, Avaya IP Agent searches the directory containing the configuration file for `AvayaIPAgent.exe`.

- The `NewCfgAddress` entry is optional. This entry specifies the URL or IP address where another configuration file is located. If the other configuration file is found, Avaya IP Agent uses the information in this file rather than the information in the previous configuration file. Using this feature eliminates the need for the administrator to visit each installation and make the change manually. When Avaya IP Agent is redirected to another configuration file, the location and filename are overwritten in the Program Options. When Avaya IP Agent is restarted, it will attempt to open the new configuration file instead of the old one.
- The `Address` entry is optional. This entry is used by Avaya IP Agent to send information to a Web page following an upgrade. This information can then be viewed by an administrator to determine which personal computers have applied the latest Avaya IP Agent update. For example, following an update, Avaya IP Agent could send the following string to a Web page for entry into a database, such as an `.ASP` Web page:

```
http://server.company.com/  
report.asp?pcname=MYP&station=5551212&agentid=1000&version=4.0.1.5&lastup  
date=Failed&date=01/01/2003&time=12:00:00 PM
```

The `Address` entry is used to prefix the string of fields and data.

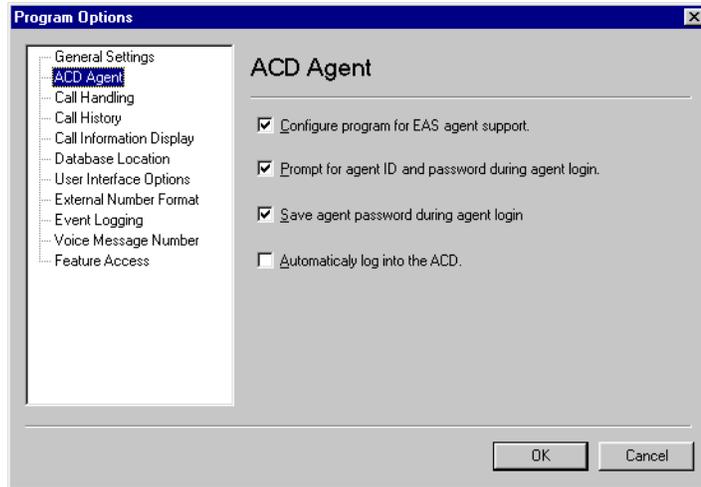
If you require assistance in creating a Web page for this feature, you can contact the Avaya Professional Services Organization for information and pricing regarding available services.



Important:

If Internet Explorer, iClarityAdmin, Bluetooth Integrator or the Log Collection tool are running when the update is attempted, the update will fail.

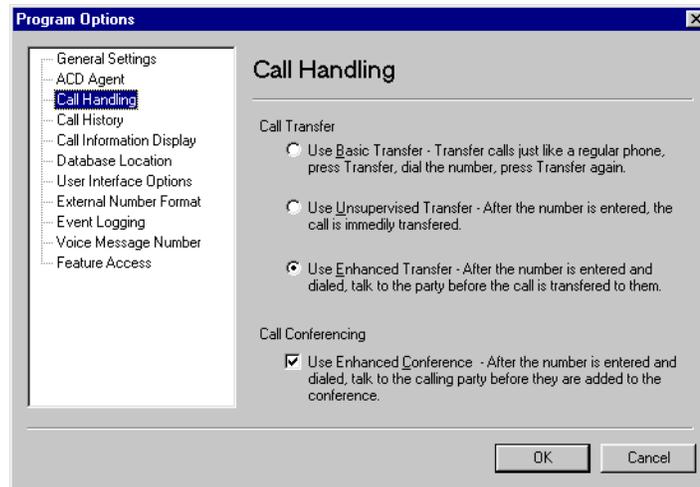
ACD Agent panel



The **ACD Agent** panel contains the following items:

- **Configure program for EAS agent support** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent supports the Expert Agent Selection (EAS) feature for Avaya communication servers. Otherwise, Avaya IP Agent supports a non-EAS environment. EAS environments use *skills* and non-EAS environments use *splits*.
- **Prompt for agent ID and password during agent login** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent displays a dialog box when an agent requests a login to the Avaya communication server. The dialog box prompts the agent for agent ID and password.
- **Save agent password during agent login** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent saves the password of an agent after a successful login.
- **Automatically log into the ACD** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent attempts to automatically log the agent in to the Avaya communication server after successful extension registration.

Call Handling panel



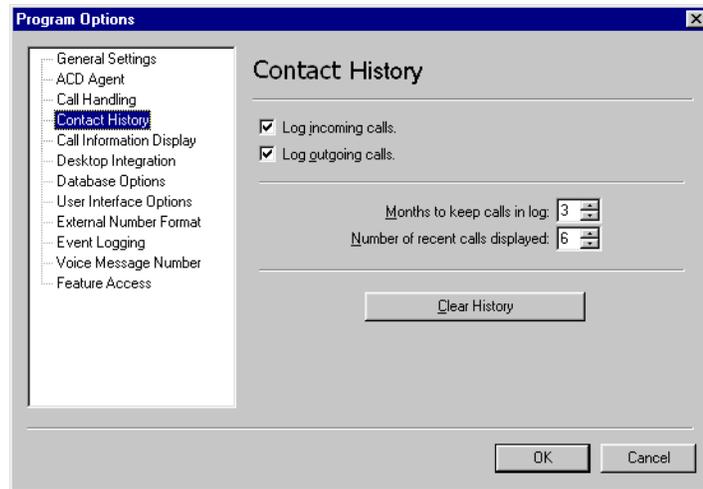
The **Call Handling** panel contains the following items:

- **Call Transfer - Use Basic Transfer** - Selecting this option sets the default transfer mode to the basic method.
- **Call Transfer - Use Unsupervised Transfer** - Selecting this option sets the default transfer mode to the unsupervised method.
- **Call Transfer - Use Enhanced Transfer** - Selecting this option sets the default transfer mode to the enhanced method.
- **Call Conferencing - Use Enhanced Conference** - Enabling this check box sets the default conferencing mode to the enhanced method. Otherwise, Avaya IP Agent uses the basic conferencing mode.

Note:

The default transfer mode in this panel is changed if you select a different transfer mode from the main window. For example, if you set **Use Basic Transfer** in this panel, but select to use an Enhanced Transfer from the main window, **Use Enhanced Transfer** is now set as the default in this panel.

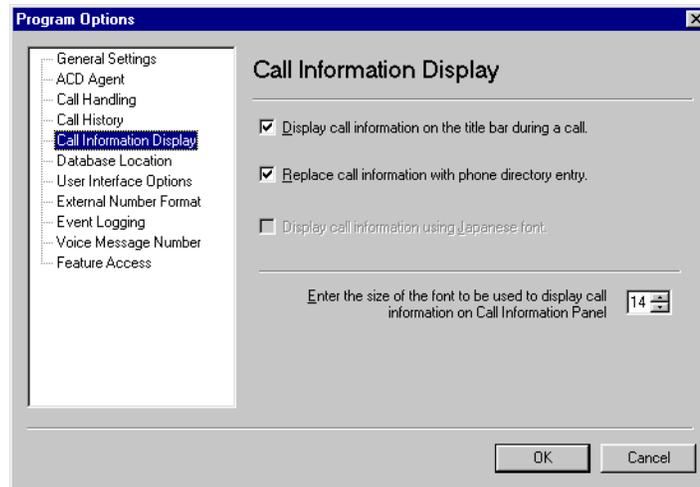
Contact History panel



The **Contact History** panel contains the following items:

- **Log incoming calls** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent makes a record of all calls received at this station in the **Contact History** log.
- **Log outgoing calls** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent makes a record of all calls made from this station in the **Contact History** log.
- **Months to keep calls in log** - Use this field to specify the number of months for which records are stored in the **Contact History** log.
- **Number of recent calls displayed** - Use this field to specify the number of records that are displayed when you click the **Contact History** quick list on the Dial Number toolbar.
- **Clear history** - Selecting this button clears all records from the **Contact History** log.

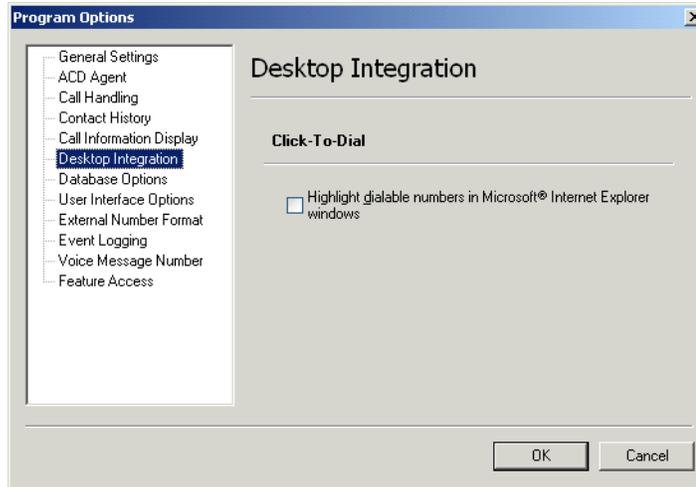
Call Information Display panel



The **Call Information Display** panel contains the following items:

- **Display call information on the title bar during a call** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent displays information about the active call in the title bar of the main window.
- **Replace call information with contact directory entry** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent uses the information from the **Contact Directory** if the telephone number for the active call is found. If the telephone number for the active call is not found, the call information from the Avaya communication server is displayed.
- **Display call information using Japanese font** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent displays all information in Japanese. This feature is available only if the Japanese version of Avaya IP Agent was installed.
- **Enter the size of the font to be used to display call information on Call Information Panel** - Use this field to select the point size of the font that Avaya IP Agent uses to display call information in the Call Information Panel on the main window.

Desktop Integration panel



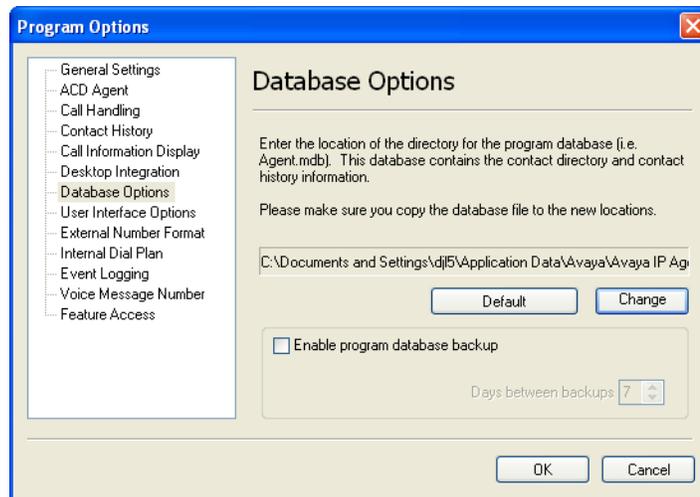
The **Desktop Integration** panel contains the following items:

- **Highlight dialable numbers in Microsoft® Internet Explorer windows** - When this check box is enabled, telephone numbers that appear in a valid format in Internet Explorer will be highlighted in yellow. You can then place the mouse cursor over the highlighted telephone number and click it for Avaya IP Agent to automatically dial that number.

Note:

You must restart Internet Explorer to activate Desktop Integration.

Database Options panel



The **Database Options** panel contains the following items:

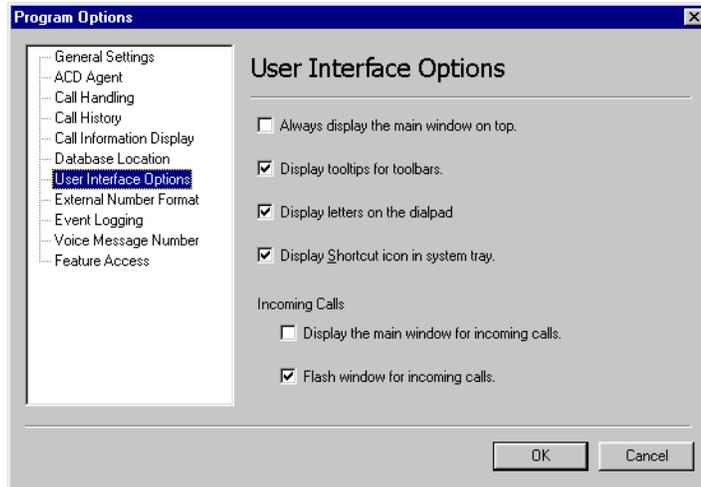
- **Directory:** - This field displays the current location of the database (`Agent.mdb`) that Avaya IP Agent uses to store the entries for the **Contact History** log and the **Contact Directory**.

Note:

If you want to change the location of the program database, you must copy the database to the new location before changing this setting.

- **Default** - If you have previously changed the location of the database, you can select this button to change the location back to the default location that was set at application runtime.
- **Change...** - Select this button to specify a different location for the Avaya IP Agent database (`Agent.mdb`).
- **Enable program database backup** - If you want to Avaya IP Agent to automatically save a copy of the program database, place a check mark in this check box.
- **Days between backups** - Use this spin control to specify the number of days between backups of the program database.

User Interface Options panel



The **User Interface Options** panel contains the following items:

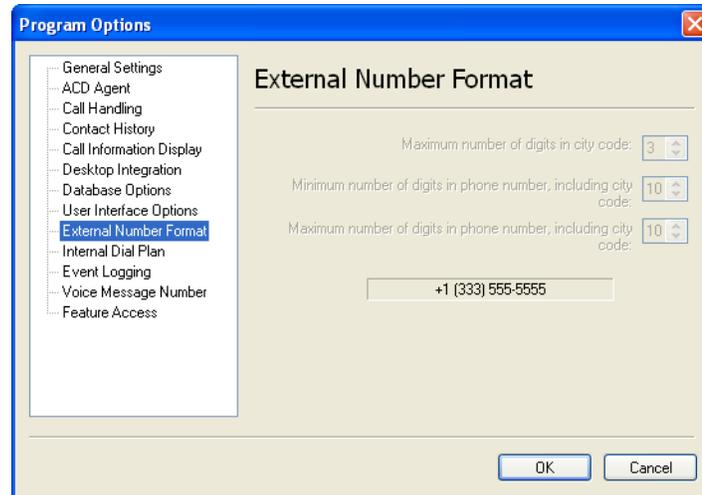
- **Always display the main window on top** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent always appears in the foreground of your Windows desktop, in front of all other application windows.

Note:

This option is disabled in Windows Vista. It appears disabled on the panel.

- **Display tooltips for toolbars** - When this check box is enabled, tooltips appear when the mouse cursor is placed over buttons on the toolbars of the main window.
- **Display letters on the dialpad** - When this check box is enabled, the **Dial Pad** displays the letters that correspond to the numbers on the number pad of a telephone.
- **Display the Shortcut icon in the system tray** - When this check box is enabled, the Avaya IP Agent icon is displayed in the System Tray on the Windows task bar.
- **Incoming Calls - Display the main window for incoming calls** - When this check box is enabled and a call is received, the main window is displayed in front of any other application windows that are currently open.
- **Incoming Calls - Flash window for incoming calls** - When this check box is enabled, the title of the main window in the task bar flashes when a call is incoming. This behavior resembles selection and de-selection of the window.

External Number Format panel

**Note:**

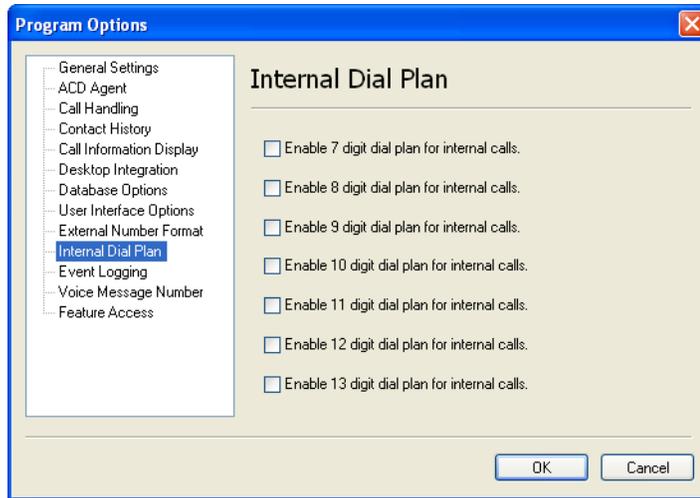
The three controls in this panel are automatically disabled if you have set your dialing properties for the United States. The controls are only available for those countries outside of the United States.

For countries outside the United States, information must be provided in this panel regarding the format of telephone numbers within the country. Using this panel, you can set the maximum and minimum length of telephone numbers used within the country, including city codes. This information determines when the code for another country should be added to a telephone number so that the number can be stored in the correct format.

The **External Number Format** panel contains the following items:

- **Maximum number of digits in city code** - Specify the number of digits that are dialed for telephone numbers that use a code to identify a city.
- **Minimum number of digits in phone number, including city code** - Specify the fewest number of digits that can be used to dial an external call. This number should also include the code used to identify a city.
- **Maximum number of digits in phone number, including city code** - Specify the largest number of digits that can be used to dial an external call. This number should also include the code used to identify a city.

Internal Dial Plan panel



The **Internal Dial Plan** panel allows support for multiple internal dial plans. Dial plans of more than five digits are available only through MultiVantage or Communication Manager systems. When any of these check boxes are enabled, Avaya IP Agent treats a dialed number consisting of the selected number of digits as an internal extension.

⚠ Important:

For a phone number to be correctly reformatted and stored in the application database, the enabled dial plan option must be set prior to accepting or generating calls or creating contact phone numbers.

Event Logging panel



The **Event Logging** panel contains the following items:

- **Enable logging for IP Agent** - When this check box is enabled, all associated program activity is recorded. Avaya support personnel use this information to determine the cause of any problems with Avaya IP Agent.



WARNING:

Restrict Event Logging may limit the ability for Avaya Services to diagnose an issue with your system. If you do not enable Event Logging, make sure that Event Logging can be enabled at the time of calling in a trouble ticket.

- **View Log** - Select this button to display the Avaya IP Agent log file.
- **Monitor** - Select this button to display the **Events Monitor** window. This window displays all Avaya IP Agent events that are recorded with the logging feature. This window displays information only if the **Enable logging for IP Agent** check box is enabled.

Note:

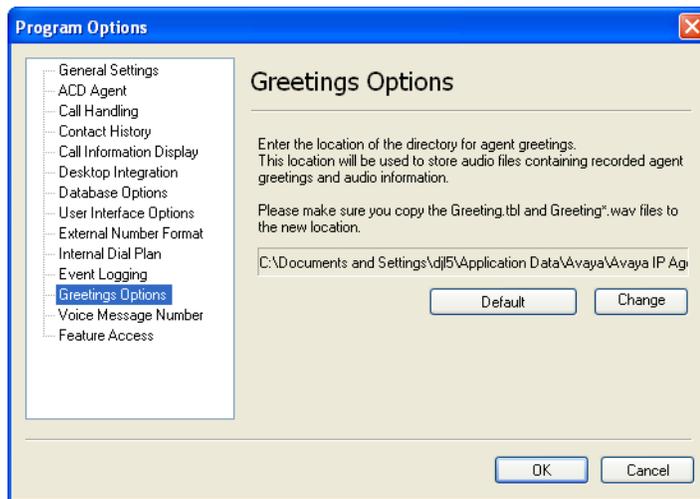
You should enable recording of event logs only if they are requested by Avaya technical support personnel.



WARNING:

If you do restrict the logging for technical support, it may limit the ability for Avaya Services to diagnose your issue. If you do decide to "lockdown / restrict" this utility, make sure that the feature can be unlocked at time of calling in a trouble ticket.

Greetings Options panel



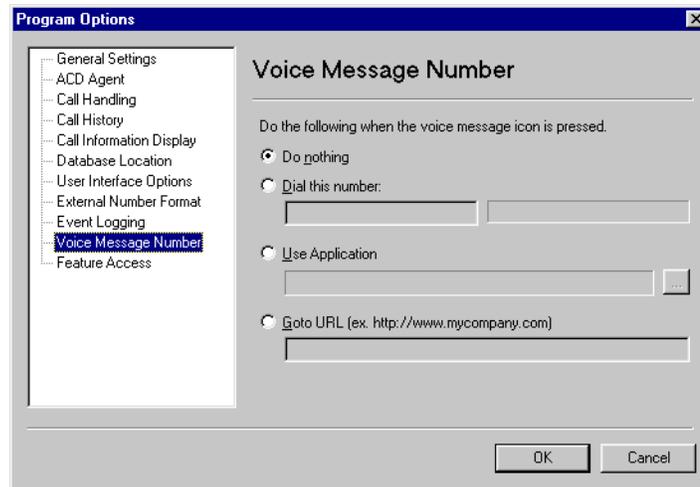
The **Greetings Options** panel contains the following items:

- Location field - This field displays the path where Avaya IP Agent stores agent greetings for the Road Warrior, Telecommuter (with Avaya Switcher II), and Callmaster VI configurations.
- **Default** - Select this button to change to the location that was set during installation.
- **Change** - Select this button to open a browse window where you can select the directory where Avaya IP Agent uses and stores agent greetings. You can store agent greetings on the local personal computer or in a network location.

Note:

If you have recorded agent greetings in another location, those greetings will not be moved if you change the location.

Voice Message Number panel



The options on this dialog determine what action is taken when you click the voice message icon in the System Tray or on the main application status bar.

Note:

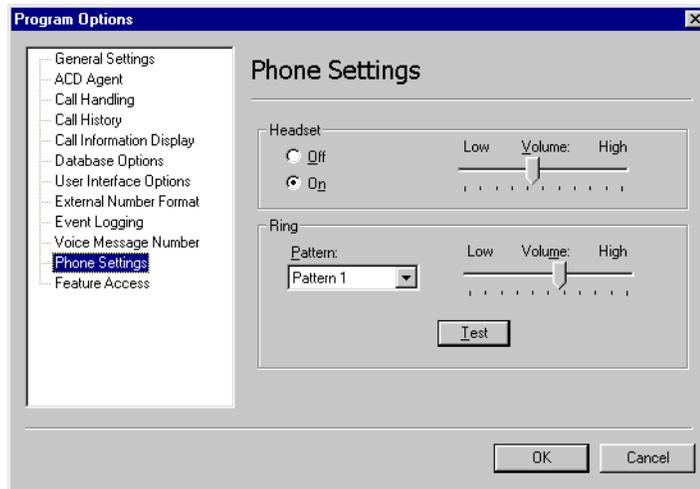
This icon is displayed only when voice messages exist for an extension.



The **Voice Message Number** panel contains the following items:

- **Do nothing** - Avaya IP Agent does not initiate any action when you click the icon.
- **Dial this number** - Select this option and provide a telephone number or extension to dial in the associated field. When you click the icon, Avaya IP Agent dials the number in this field.
- **Use Application** - Select this option and provide the path and filename of an executable program file for Avaya IP Agent to run when you click the icon.
- **Goto URL** - Select this option and provide a Uniform Resource Locator (URL) address that will be opened when you click the icon.

Phone Settings panel



Note: The **Phone Settings** panel is only visible for Callmaster VI configurations.

The **Phone Settings** panel contains the following items:

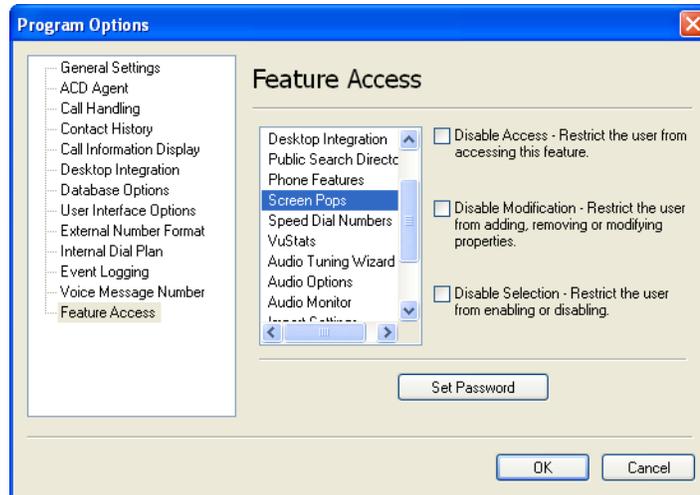
Headset

- **Off** - Select this button to deactivate the Callmaster headset. When the headset is deactivated, you cannot use it for calls. Deactivation of the headset is primarily used in the process of recording agent greetings.
- **On** - Select this button to activate the Callmaster headset.
- **Volume** - Use this slider control to adjust the volume of the audio output heard through the headset.

Ring

- **Pattern** - Use this field to select one of the eight distinctive audio signals that notify you when a call is waiting to be answered.
- **Volume** - Use this slider control to adjust the volume of the Callmaster ringing pattern.
- **Test** - Select this button to cause the Callmaster to ring according to the current settings in the **Pattern** and **Volume** fields.

Feature Access panel



⚠ Important:

In order for the **Disable Modification** feature to function properly, an administrative password must be set through the **Set Password** button. If a password is not set, the **Disable Modification** check box can have a check mark placed in it, but it cannot restrict users from modifying any options because a password must be used for validation.

Use the **Feature Access** panel to restrict users from administering or making changes to the various features of Avaya IP Agent. When any changes are made to these feature areas, you must restart Avaya IP Agent for these restrictions to take effect.

The **Feature Access** panel contains the following items:

- **Feature List** - Each of the Avaya IP Agent areas listed in this box can be protected from modifications. To select a feature area, click on the feature in this list.
- **Disable Access** - When this check box is enabled, users are restricted from accessing the specified feature panel. This option is reinforced for the **Program Options** feature by setting the administrative password. When access to a feature is disabled, the feature does not appear in the menus on the menu bar of the main window.

Note:

If **Program Options** access is disabled, then **Configuration Admin** access must also be disabled.

- **Disable Modification** - When this check box is enabled, users cannot alter the feature.
- **Disable Selection** - When this check box is enabled, users cannot activate a screen pop by double-clicking it in the **Screen Pops** window.

- **Set Password/Enter Password** - Select this button to display the **Change Password...** dialog box. When you enter a password, the options for the **Feature Access** dialog box cannot be changed until the proper password is entered.



Important:

Once Disable Access to Program Options is enabled and an administrative password is set, re-enabling access to Program Options can only be done via regedit or the use of an external script update.

Note:

The **Event Logging** panel is always available, even if you have restricted access to all features. In this manner, agents can activate logging without administrator intervention. You should need to record event logs only if they are requested by Avaya technical support personnel.

Login Settings dialog box

Use the **Login Settings** dialog box to specify the necessary data for Road Warrior, Telecommuter, IP Telephone, Avaya Telephone, and Instant Messaging configurations. This dialog box is accessed by pressing the **Settings** button on the **Login** window that is used to register with an Avaya communication server.

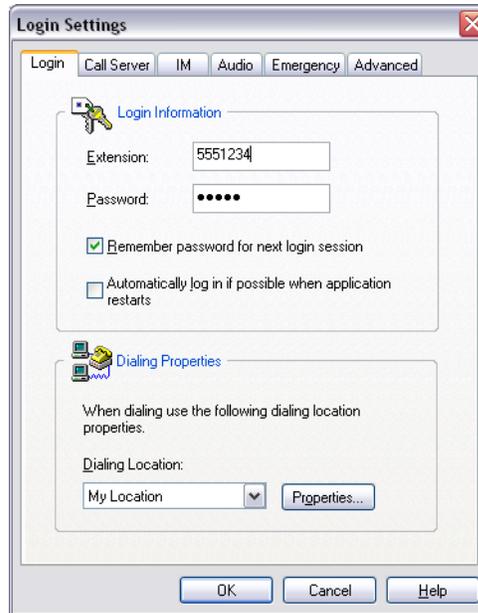
This section contains the following topics:

- [Login tab](#) on page 241
- [Call Server tab](#) on page 242
- [IM tab](#) on page 243
- [Audio tab](#) on page 244
- [Emergency tab](#) on page 245
- [Advanced tab](#) on page 246

Note:

If you are using the IP Telephone configuration, only the **Login** tab will be displayed.

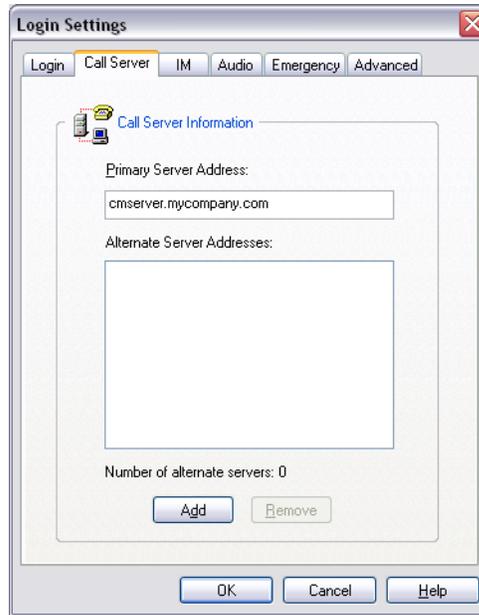
Login tab



The **Login** tab of the **Login Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Extension** - The extension number used in conjunction with Avaya IP Agent.
- **Password** - The numeric password associated with the specified extension number.
- **Remember password for next login session** - When this check box is enabled, the Login window retains the password used to register this extension number with the Avaya communication server. If you are concerned about the possibility of unauthorized persons assuming this identity, leave this check box blank.
- **Automatically login if possible when application restarts** - When this check box is enabled, logging in to the Avaya communication server is attempted automatically when Avaya IP Agent is started.
- **Dialing Location** - Specify the dialing configuration that Windows should use when making telephone calls. For example, an agent using a notebook computer may have one configuration that dials 9 for an outside line when in the office, and a separate configuration that does not dial 9 when the notebook computer is used in other locations.
- **Properties** - Select this button to display or modify the configuration specified in **Dialing Location** list.

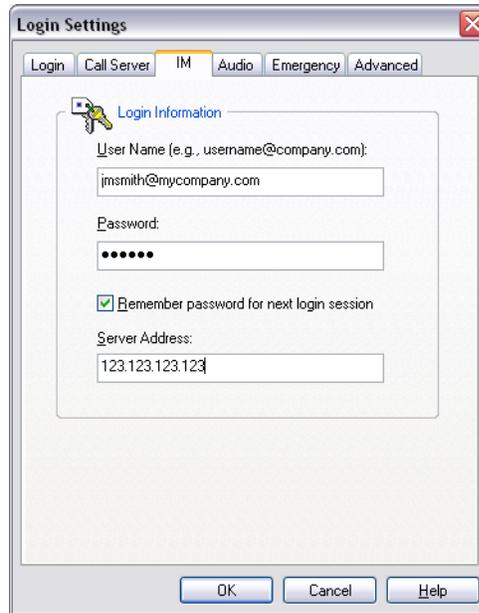
Call Server tab



The **Server** tab of the **Login Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Primary Server Address** - This field contains the domain name or IP address of the Avaya communication server that this extension will connect to.
- **Alternate Server Addresses** - This list box is automatically populated after registration of the Avaya communication server, specified in the **Primary Server Address** field, completes successfully. If communication with the primary Avaya communication server fails after Avaya IP Agent successfully registers with it, Avaya IP Agent attempts to use the other Avaya communication servers in this field.
- **Number of alternate servers** - This area displays the number of communication servers that are available in the **Alternate Server Addresses** field.
- **Add** - This button allows manual addition of an Avaya communication server to the list of alternate Avaya communication servers.
- **Remove** - Select this button to remove the currently highlighted communication server in the Alternate Server Addresses list. Removing an Avaya communication server from the list in this manner affects only the current Avaya IP Agent session. If you log off from the Avaya communication server or shut down Avaya IP Agent and then reconnect, this list of alternate server addresses is again refreshed from the list kept on the Avaya communication server.

IM tab



The **IM** tab of the Login Settings dialog box contains the following controls:

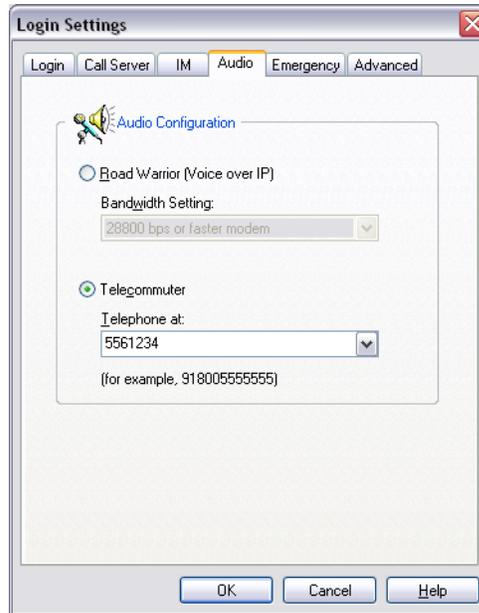
- **User Name** - Enter the SIP Enablement Services user name that will be used for instant messaging at the personal computer.

Note:

The user name is case-sensitive. It must match the user name that was defined on SIP Enablement Services.

- **Password** - Enter the password associated with the user name.
- **Remember password for next login session** - Enable this check box if you want Avaya IP Agent to retain the password for this user name.
- **Server Address** - Enter the IP Address or domain name of the SIP Enablement Services.

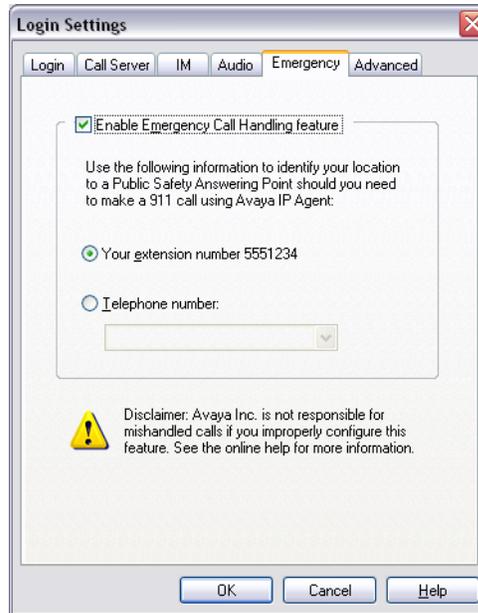
Audio tab



The **Audio** tab of the **Login Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Road Warrior (Voice over IP)** - Select this option to specify that both the data channel and the voice channel are routed through the personal computer using Internet Protocol.
- **Bandwidth Setting** - Select the rate at which data is transmitted and received in the Road Warrior configuration.
- **Telecommuter** - Select this option to specify that the data channel is routed through the personal computer using Internet Protocol and that voice communications are conducted through a telephone.
- **Telephone at** - Enter or select the telephone number through which voice communications are to be conducted.

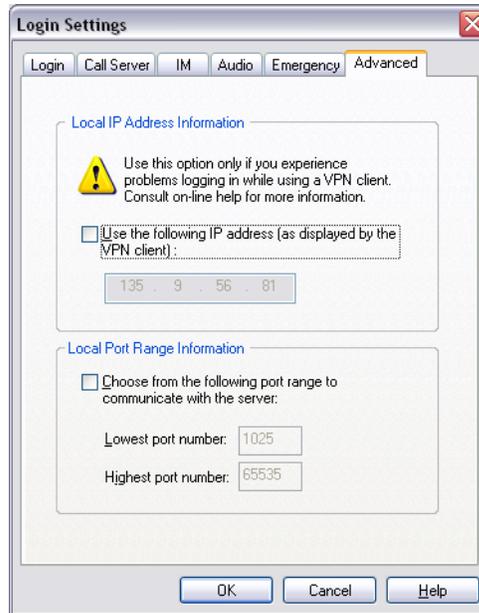
Emergency tab



The **Emergency** tab of the **Login Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Enable Emergency Call Handling feature** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya IP Agent notifies the Avaya communication server that this endpoint supports this feature and that emergency calls placed from this endpoint should transmit the specified telephone or extension number to emergency services.
- **Your extension number** - Select this option if you want your extension number to be transmitted to emergency services personnel when an emergency call is made.
- **Telephone number** - Select this option if you want a specific telephone number to be transmitted to emergency services personnel when an emergency call is made. Enter the telephone number in the associated field. See [Configuring the Emergency Call Handling Service](#) on page 102 for more information regarding this feature.

Advanced tab



The **Advanced** tab of the **Login Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Use the following IP address (as displayed by the VPN client)** - Select this option if you need to replace the IP address of this personal computer with a different IP address so that transmissions from this personal computer are recognized by the VPN. The VPN information must be provided before registering with the Avaya communication server.

Note:

The IP address cannot be 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 .

- **Choose from the following port range to communicate with the server** - When this check box is enabled, Avaya iClarity IP Audio will use the port range that you specify in the associated fields. This feature is used to restrict the Avaya iClarity IP Audio to a limited range of ports with which to communicate through a network firewall. Avaya iClarity IP Audio uses the UDP and TCP/IP protocols in association with this range.

Note:

The range specified must cover a range of at least 100 ports.

- **Lowest port number** - Enter the lowest port that Avaya iClarity IP Audio will use. The minimum for this field is 1025.
- **Highest port number** - Enter the highest port that Avaya iClarity IP Audio will use. The maximum for this field is 65535.

Audio Port Range Administration

On the Avaya communication server, use the **UDP Port Range** fields on the **IP Network Region** administration screen to configure the port selections for an IP endpoint.

Prior to administering the audio port range values, you must set the IP network region with which the endpoint will be associated. See the documentation for your Avaya communication server for information on network regions.

The screenshot shows the 'IP Network Region' configuration interface. The 'UDP Port Range' section is highlighted with a red circle, showing 'Min: 2000' and 'Max: 3005'. Other visible fields include 'Region: 1', 'Name: region 1', 'Codec Set: 1', 'Location', 'Direct IP-IP Audio Connections?' (n), 'IP Audio Hairpinning?' (y), 'RTCP Enabled?' (y), 'RTCP Monitor Server Parameters', 'Use Default Server Parameters?' (n), 'Server IP Address: 123.123.123.123', 'Server Port: 5005', 'RTCP Report Period(secs): 5', 'DiffServ/TOS Parameters' (Call Control PHB Value: 34, VoIP Media PHB Value: 30, BBE PHB Value: 43), and '802.1p/Q Enabled?' (n).

It is important that the intersection of the audio port ranges set for Avaya iClarity IP Audio and for the Avaya communication server overlap by at least 100 ports. In the event that the overlap is less than 100, the range reported by the Avaya communication server is ignored.

For example, if the port range is set to 51000-51100 and the Avaya communication server reports an audio port range of 50950-51005, then the overlap is 5 and Avaya iClarity IP Audio ignores the range reported by the Avaya communication server.

Note:

The Avaya communication server may require that you enable ports 1719 and 1720 on your firewall for proper communication.

Instant Messaging settings

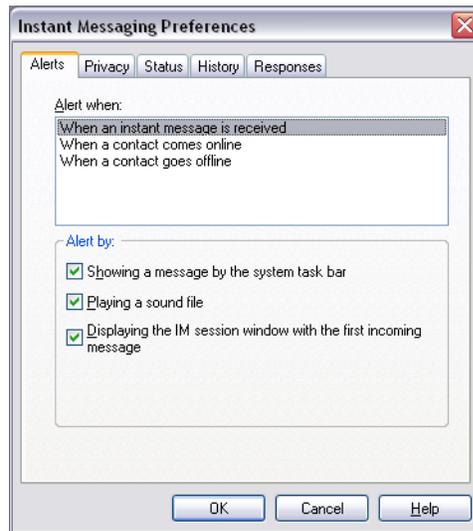
The **Instant Messaging Preferences** dialog box allows you to configure this feature in many ways.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Alerts tab](#) on page 248
- [Privacy tab](#) on page 249
- [Status tab](#) on page 250
- [History tab](#) on page 251

- [Responses tab](#) on page 252

Alerts tab

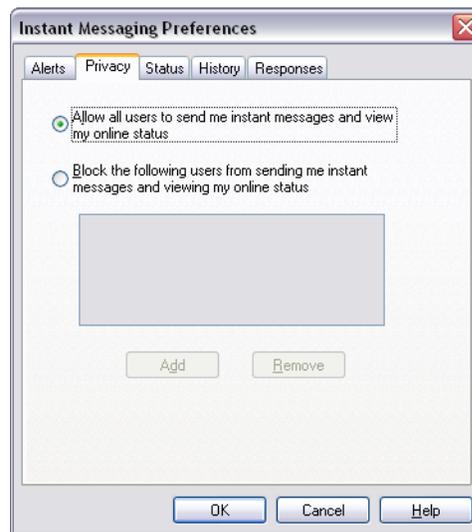


The **Alerts** tab contains the following controls:

- **Alert when** - Highlighting one of the entries in this list box displays the available alert methods in the **Alert by** box. You can be notified of the following instant messaging events:
 - **When an instant message is received** - The selected notification actions in the **Alert by** box are performed when another Avaya IP Agent user sends you an instant message.
 - **When a contact comes online** - The selected notification actions in the **Alert by** box are performed when an Avaya IP Agent user in your **Contact Directory** changes his or her state to **Online**.
 - **When a contact goes offline** - The selected notification actions in the **Alert by** box are performed when an Avaya IP Agent user in your **Contact Directory** changes his or her state to **Appear Offline** or logs off from the SIP Enablement Services.
- **Alert by** - Placing a check mark next to an alert method will cause Avaya IP Agent to perform that notification when the highlighted event in the **Alert when** box occurs. Not all alert methods are available for all instant messaging events. The following list describes the available notification actions:

- **Showing a message by the system task bar** - When the selected instant messaging event in the **Alert when** box occurs, Avaya IP Agent displays a small information message box above the Windows System Tray. This message box displays the user name of the instant messaging user from your **Contact Directory** and the event that occurred.
- **Playing a sound file** - When the selected instant messaging event in the **Alert when** box occurs, Avaya IP Agent plays a sound file on your personal computer.
- **Displaying the IM session window with the first incoming message** - If this alert method is enabled, an **Instant Message Session** window is displayed when another Avaya IP Agent user sends you a text message. This text message is displayed in the window.

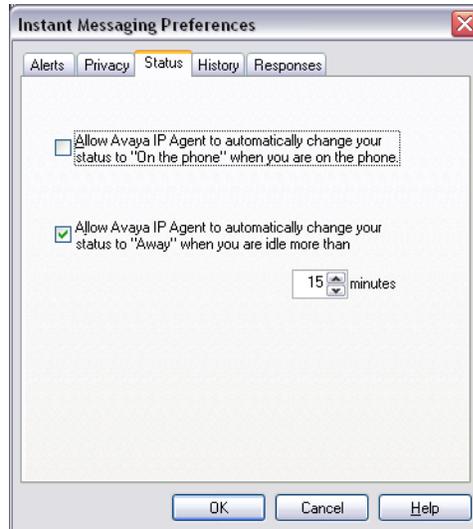
Privacy tab



The **Privacy** tab contains the following controls:

- **Allow all users to send me instant messages and view my online status** - Selecting this option allows all other Avaya IP Agent users to send instant messages to you and see your current presence state.
- **Block the following users from sending me instant messages and viewing my online status** - Selecting this option allows you to block other Avaya IP Agent users from sending instant messages to you or seeing your current presence state.
- **Add** - Select this button to add an Avaya IP Agent user to your list of blocked instant messaging user names.
- **Remove** - Select this button to remove the highlighted user name from the list of blocked instant messaging users.

Status tab



The **Status** tab contains the following controls:

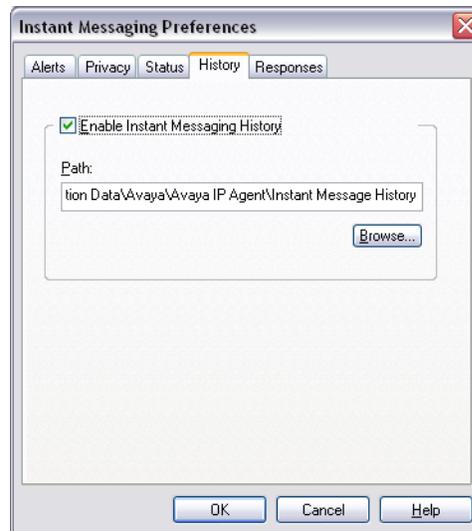
- **Allow Avaya IP Agent to automatically change your status to "On the phone" when you are on the phone** - Enable this check box to have your presence state changed to **On the phone** when you receive a call through Avaya IP Agent.

Note:

If you use the Telecommuter mode and place a call through your telephone instead of Avaya IP Agent, your presence state will not change.

- **Allow Avaya IP Agent to automatically change your status to "Away" when you are idle more than** - Enable this check box to have your presence state changed to away when you have not used the keyboard or mouse for the amount of time specified in the minutes field.
- **Minutes field** - Use this field to set the amount of time that you must not provide keyboard or mouse input for Avaya IP Agent to set your presence state to **Away**.

History tab



The **History** tab contains the following controls:

- **Enable Instant Messaging History** - Place a check mark in this check box to have Avaya IP Agent record all messages that are exchanged between you and all other users through instant messaging.
- **Path** - In this field, provide a path where the message database will be located. In the IP Agent R7 Controlled Desktop environment, you cannot change this field.

Note:

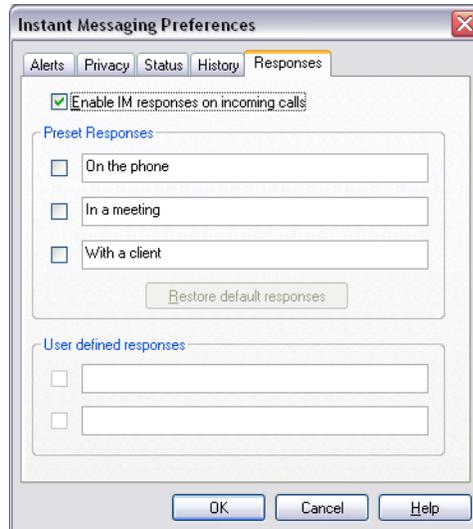
If you change the location of this database, your previous message history will not be migrated to the new location.

! Important:

You should not have multiple users storing instant messaging databases in the same location.

- **Browse** - Select this button to display a window that allows you to select an existing folder on your personal computer as the location in the **Path** field. You can also create a new folder in this window and set it as the location in the **Path** field.

Responses tab



The **Responses** tab contains the following controls:

- **Enable IM responses on incoming calls** - Place a check mark in this check box to have Avaya IP Agent place a response icon on the Call Information Panel for calls to or from other instant messaging users.

For example, if you are on a telephone call and another instant messaging user tries to call you, an instant messaging icon is displayed on the new call appearance. If you click this icon, you can select a predefined response from a popup list. This response is sent to the instant messaging user trying to call you, notifying that user why you are not answering their call.

- **Present Responses** - Place a check mark in one or more responses to make them available when you click the instant messaging icon on a Call Information Panel.
- **User defined responses** - If you want to have additional responses to select from, enter the necessary text in these fields. Once you have entered text into these fields, you can then place a check mark in the associated check box to make them available.

Agent Greetings settings

The **Agent Greetings** dialog boxes are used to configure a single agent greeting. Through these settings, you configure the criteria that will cause this agent greeting to be played.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Greeting Description settings](#) on page 253
- [ANI settings](#) on page 254
- [VDN settings](#) on page 255
- [Prompted Digits settings](#) on page 256

Greeting Description settings



The **Greeting Description** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Greeting** - Enter the title of this Agent Greeting.
- **Description** - Enter text in this field to provide more information for this agent greeting, such as purpose or usage.
- **Auto-play only for Agent ID** - If this option is selected, this agent greeting is played for incoming calls only if the currently logged in agent ID matches the ID entered in the associated field to the right of this option button.
- **Auto-play only when an agent is logged in** - If this option is selected, this agent greeting is played for incoming calls only if the agent is logged in to the ACD.
- **Auto-play greeting for all incoming calls** - If this option is selected, this agent greeting is played for all incoming calls, even if the agent is not currently logged in to the ACD.
- **Auto-play only in active agent mode** - If this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played only if the agent is in the Auto-In or Manual-In work mode.

ANI settings

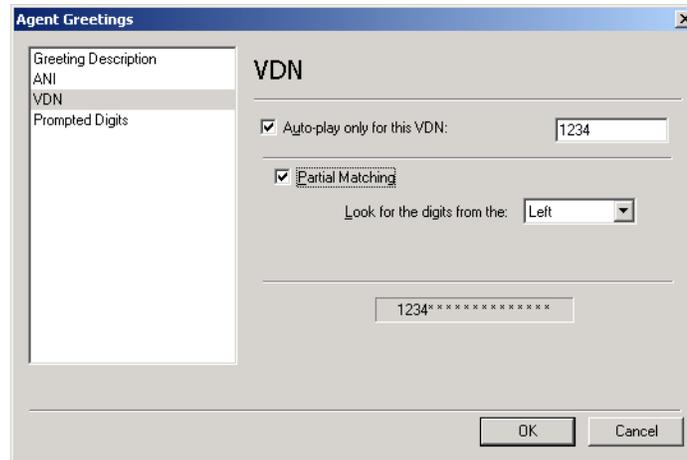


The **ANI** (Automatic Number Identification) dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Auto-play only for this ANI** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played only if the ANI string contains the digits that you specify in the accompanying field to the right of this check box.
- **Partial Matching** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played if the digits in the **Auto-play only for this ANI** field appear anywhere within the ANI string.
- **Look for the digits from the** - If you enable the **Partial Matching** check box, you must also select the location in the ANI string where the digits are to be found. For example, if you select the **Left** option, the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for this ANI** field must be the first digits in the ANI string.
- **Starting at** - This field is displayed only if the **Look for the digits from the** field is set to **Middle**. Use this field to specify how many digits from the left side of the string should be ignored before attempting to match the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for this ANI** field.

The field at the bottom of this dialog box displays the current settings and how those settings are applied in the comparison of an ANI string.

VDN settings

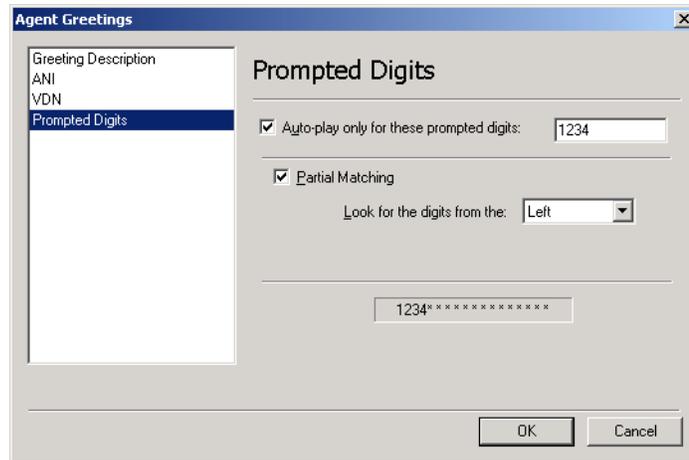


The **VDN** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Auto-play only for this VDN** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played if the VDN on which the call is received matches the string in the associated field to the right of this check box.
- **Partial Matching** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played if the digits in the **Auto-play only for this VDN** field appear anywhere in the VDN string.
- **Look for the digits from the** - If you enable the **Partial Matching** option, you must also select the location in the VDN string where the digits are to appear. For example, if you select the **Right** option, the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for this VDN** field must match the final digits in the VDN number for this agent greeting to be played.
- **Starting at** - This field is displayed only if you set the **Look for the digits from the** field to **Middle**. Use this field to specify how many digits from the left side of the string should be ignored before the system attempts to match the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for this VDN** field.

The field at the bottom of this dialog box displays the current settings and how those settings are applied in the comparison of a VDN string.

Prompted Digits settings



The **Prompted Digits** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Auto-play only for these prompted digits** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played if the digits entered by the caller during vector processing match the digits in the associated field.
- **Partial Matching** - When this check box is enabled, this agent greeting is played if the digits in the **Auto-play only for these prompted digits** field appear anywhere within the string of prompted digits.
- **Look for the digits from the** - If you enable the **Partial Matching** option, you must also select the location in the prompted digits string where the digits can be found. For example, if you select the **Middle** option, the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for these prompted digits** field must be present in the string, at the position specified in the **Starting at** field, for this agent greeting to play.
- **Starting at** - This field is displayed only if the **Look for the digits from the** field is set to **Middle**. Use this field to specify how many digits from the left side of the string should be ignored before the system attempts to match the digits specified in the **Auto-play only for these prompted digits** field.

The field at the bottom of this dialog displays the current settings and how those settings are applied in the comparison of the string of prompted digits.

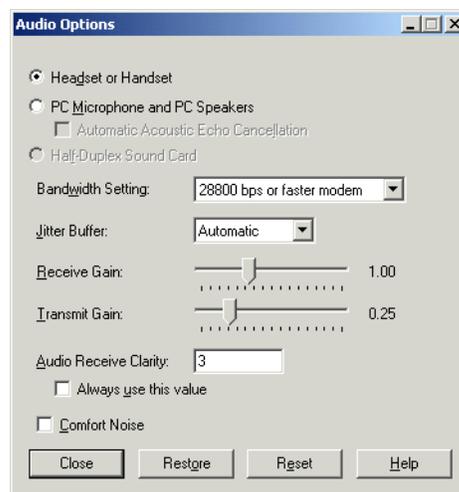
Audio settings

This section provides descriptions of the **Audio Options** and **Audio Tuning Wizard** dialog boxes. Both of these dialog boxes are available for Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations. The Telecommuter configuration uses only the **Audio Tuning Wizard** dialog box.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Audio Options dialog box](#) on page 257
- [Audio Monitor dialog box](#) on page 259
- [Volume and Ringer Settings dialog box](#) on page 260
- [Audio Tuning Wizard](#) on page 261

Audio Options dialog box



The **Audio Options** dialog box contains the following items:

- **Headset or Handset** - Select this option button if you are using a headphone or a headset to speak to and hear the other party on a call. This option button is disabled if the **Audio Tuning Wizard** identifies a half-duplex sound card in your personal computer.
- **PC Microphone and PC Speakers** - Select this option button if you are using a microphone and personal computer speakers to speak to and hear the other party on a call.
 - **Automatic Acoustic Echo Cancellation** - This feature is not available in this release of iClarity.

- **Half-Duplex Sound Card** - Select this option if you have a half-duplex sound card in your personal computer. This option button is disabled if the **Audio Tuning Wizard** identified a full-duplex sound device in your personal computer. If you are using Avaya IP Agent in the Road Warrior (VoIP) configuration, it is highly recommended that you use a full-duplex sound device for maximum audio quality. A list of supported sound devices is available on the Internet at <http://support.avaya.com>.
- **Bandwidth Setting** - Select how your personal computer connects to the Avaya communication server. Avaya IP Agent uses the bandwidth setting to determine which codec to use with the Avaya communication server. This field contains the following options:
 - **28800 bps or faster modem** - For a 28800 bps or better mode connection, the G.723 codec may be used. This codec is used for low-speed connections.
 - **Cable, xDSL or ISDN**
 - G.729a - Use this codec for mid-speed connections.
 - G.723 - Use this codec for low-speed connections.
 - **Local Area Network**
 - G.711 u-law (CCITT u-law) - Use this codec for high-speed connections.
 - G.711 A-law (CCITT A-law) - Use this codec for high-speed connections.
 - G.729a - Use this codec for mid-speed connections.
 - G.723 - Use this codec for low-speed connections.
- **Jitter Buffer** - Displays the size of the jitter buffer, which stores packets to ensure a consistent delivery of voice to your speakers or headset so that the voice stream you hear does not contain gaps. The larger the jitter buffer, the longer the delay receiving audio from the other party. Generally, a maximum of 200 milliseconds is considered acceptable. Avaya recommends that you use the **Automatic** setting so that Avaya iClarity IP Audio changes the setting as necessary. If this setting does not provide adequate audio quality, contact Avaya technical support for assistance.

 **Important:**

Do not disable the jitter buffer or set the jitter buffer to **none**. This will cause problems for any Voice-over-IP communications.

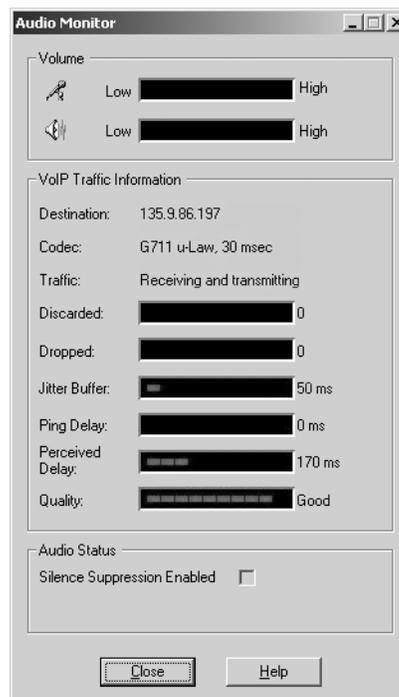
- **Receive Gain** - Use the slider control to set the gain for incoming sound during a call. The default value is 1.00.
- **Transmit Gain** - Use the slider control to set the gain for outgoing sound during a call. The default value is 0.25.
- **Audio Receive Clarity** - Enter a value to adjust the quality of incoming sound during a call. The default value is 1. If you experience popping and clicking noises with the audio received through Voice-over-IP, you should increase this value. This value can range between 1 and 100. You should use the lowest possible value that eliminates the quality problems. Increase the value by 1 until the problem no longer occurs.

- **Always use this value** - Enable this check box if you do not want Avaya iClarity IP Audio to automatically adjust this value through the Audio Tuning Wizard.
- **Comfort Noise** - Sets whether you want Avaya iClarity IP Audio to generate noise when the other party is not speaking. This noise indicates to you that the call is still active.
- **Restore** button - Select this button to use the values for the settings that were present when this dialog box was opened.
- **Reset** button - Select this button to set all values to the default product values.

Note:

You cannot restore or reset settings while you are logged in to the server.

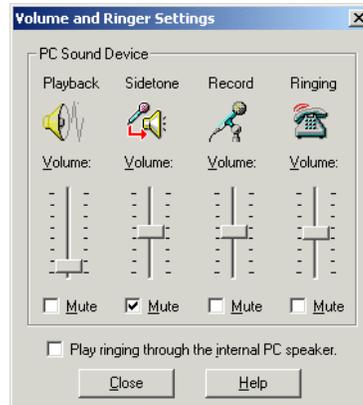
Audio Monitor dialog box



The **Audio Monitor** dialog box displays the current statistics for your Voice-over-IP (VoIP) communications. These statistics are available only during an active call. If the quality of your VoIP communications degrades, use this dialog box to determine which areas are problematic and which settings in the [Audio Options dialog box](#) should be changed.

The **Silence Suppression Enabled** check box allows you to reduce the total number of packets that are sent through your VoIP connection. When this feature is enabled, Avaya IP Agent will not transmit audio when you are not speaking.

Volume and Ringer Settings dialog box



The **Volume and Ringer Settings** dialog box contains the following items:

- **Playback**
 - **Volume** - Use this slider to adjust the volume for all sound output through your personal computer speakers or headphones.
 - **Mute** - Enable this check box to eliminate all sound output through your speakers or headset.
- **Sidetone**
 - **Volume** - Use this slider to adjust the volume of your voice as heard through your headset or personal computer speakers.
 - **Mute** - Enable this check box to eliminate hearing your own voice through your headset or personal computer speakers.
- **Record**
 - **Volume** - Use this slider to adjust the volume of all sound transmitted through a microphone to your personal computer.
 - **Mute** - Enable this check box to eliminate sound being sent to your personal computer through the microphone.
- **Ringer**
 - **Volume** - Use this slider to adjust the volume of the sound that is played through your speakers or headset that occurs when you receive an incoming call.
 - **Mute** - Enable this check box to eliminate any sound that indicates an incoming call.
- **Play ringing through the internal PC speaker** - Enable this check box to play the sound associated with an incoming call through the speakers of your personal computer and your headset simultaneously. If your personal computer does not have an internal speaker, this option will have no effect.

Audio Tuning Wizard

The **Audio Tuning Wizard** is a feature that detects the hardware and software settings for your personal computer. It will also have you test the levels for your microphone and speakers for optimum performance. See [Initializing IP Endpoint configurations](#) on page 110 for information and descriptions for the Audio Tuning Wizard interface.

Appendix A: Shortcut keys

This section contains quick reference information for shortcut keys.

Shortcut keys refer to key combinations that you can use to invoke a particular command. For example, to place a call on hold, you can press **Ctrl + H**. Some of the most commonly used shortcut keys are shown in this section. In order for shortcut keys to work as documented, the Avaya IP Agent window must have focus as the current application.

Shortcut key functions

This section contains the shortcut keys that can be used when the Avaya IP Agent is the currently selected window on your desktop. These shortcut keys are divided into the following categories:

- [Call features](#) on page 263
- [Agent features](#) on page 264
- [Avaya IP Agent features](#) on page 264
- [Windows features](#) on page 265

Call features

To...	Press...
Place a call on hold	Ctrl + H
Transfer a call	Ctrl + T to dial the number and then again to transfer the call
Conference another party	Ctrl + F to dial the number and then again to conference the call

Agent features

To...	Press...
Log in	Ctrl + Ins
Log out	Ctrl + Del
Change to After Call Work (ACW) mode	Ctrl + W
Change to Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode	Ctrl + A
Change Available mode assignment to automatic (Auto-In)	Ctrl + I
Change Available mode assignment to manual (Manual-In)	Ctrl + M
Request supervisor assistance (Assist)	Ctrl + S
Mark an event log entry	Ctrl + E Use this key combination to place an identifier on a line in the event log. This can be used to indicate when you notice a problem. This feature is only available when the event logging feature is enabled.

Avaya IP Agent features

To...	Press...
Display the Call menu for an incoming call	Alt + C
Display the Contact History window	Alt + H
Display the Contact Directory window	Alt + D
Display the Search Public Directory window	Alt + S
Display online help	F1
Exit Avaya IP Agent or close the current active window	Alt + F4

To...	Press...
View the Properties of the selected item in the Search Public Directory , Screen Pops , or Contact Directory windows.	Alt + Enter
Change the view from the Avaya IP Agent main window to the last-used alternate user interface	Ctrl+U

Windows features

To...	Press...
Alternate between running applications	Alt + Tab
Cut selected text to the clipboard	Ctrl + X
Copy the selected text to the clipboard	Ctrl + C
Paste clipboard contents to the selected area	Ctrl + V

Appendix B: Language support

This section contains quick reference information for supported languages.

Untranslated components

The following Avaya IP Agent components are provided only in English:

- Installation
- Event log
- Avaya IP Agent internal files
- Shortcut keys
- readme.txt file
- Uninstall program
- iClarity Administration tool (iClarityAdmin.exe)

Supported languages for Avaya IP Agent

The following languages are supported with Avaya IP Agent:

- English (US)
- Italian
- French
- German
- Portuguese (Brazilian)
- Spanish
- Japanese
- Korean
- Chinese (Simplified)
- Dutch

Appendix B: Language support

- Russian

The English version of Avaya IP Agent can be installed on supported operating systems using the languages specified above. Other language versions of Avaya IP Agent can be installed only on supported operating systems using that language. For example, the German version of Avaya IP Agent can be installed only on supported operating systems using German.

Appendix C: Troubleshooting

This section contains information used for troubleshooting problems with Avaya IP Agent. It is divided into the following topic areas so that it is easy for you to locate the information that you need:

- [Diagnostic log files](#) on page 269
- [Login](#) on page 270
- [Voice-over-IP](#) on page 274
- [Making and receiving calls](#) on page 278
- [Other](#) on page 280
- [Alternative solution possibilities](#) on page 283

Diagnostic log files

In the event an unhandled exception occurs in IP Agent, two log files will be generated in the **<application data>Log Files** folder. If IP Agent is installed into the default directory, the log files will be found in:

C:\Documents and Settings\<user>\Application Data\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Log Files

The following table describes the generated log files:

Filename	Contents
Diagnostic_(mm-dd-yyyyhh.mm.ss).dmp ¹	The captured binary mini-dump file generated when an unhandled exception occurs in the Avaya IP Agent application.
Module_List_(mm-dd-yyyy hh.mm.ss).txt	Ascii text file which includes summary information regarding the unhandled exception and a version listing of the modules loaded at application runtime.

1. The mm-dd-yy hh.mm.ss value indicates the local system time when the exception occurred. Use the timestamp to pair the Diagnostic and Module List files together.

Login

This section lists those problems associated with registering with the Avaya communication server and logging in as an agent.

Problem	What to do
<p>Cannot register with the Avaya communication server.</p>	<p>Check for a valid configuration:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Avaya IP Agent has limited support for firewalls and Virtual Private Networks (VPN). See Advanced tab on page 246 for more information on configuring Avaya IP Agent for use with VPNs. ● An Avaya communication server earlier than DEFINITY R10 cannot be used for Avaya IP Agent. MultiVantage and Communication Manager servers are fully supported. ● Ensure that the network connection from the personal computer is operating normally. ● Ensure that the integrated firewall feature of Windows XP is disabled. If this feature is enabled, iClarity IP Audio cannot function properly.
<p>Agents cannot log in to EAS.</p>	<p>Ensure that the following administration items have been addressed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Feature Access Codes are administered. ● If you are using a Road Warrior (VoIP) configuration, ensure that an IP Media Processor has been properly configured so that Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations can operate properly. ● If the Avaya communication server has the station set for Auto-answer, ensure that Avaya IP Agent has the Enable support for auto-answer option enabled in the Program Options window. ● Ensure that the station is configured for an AUX button. Without this button, agents cannot log in correctly if the Avaya communication server is configured so that agents must enter AUX work mode when logging in to EAS.
<p>You changed your login extension but the Avaya communication server does not recognize your login.</p>	<p>Restart your personal computer and attempt the login procedure again.</p>

Problem	What to do
<p>The phone download for the Avaya Callmaster VI failed.</p>	<p>Enter the PASTE code again for the Avaya Callmaster VI so that the Avaya communication server sends the updates to the station. Select Tools > Program Options and enter the number in the PASTE Feature Access Code: field.</p> <p>Note: Avaya communication servers can transmit only eight PASTE downloads simultaneously. To ensure that you do not encounter this download failure in the future, agents in the contact center should leave Avaya IP Agent running after logging off when shifts are completed.</p>
<p>The agent does not seem to be logged in because all of the icons are still disabled.</p>	<p>Verify the following configuration items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● On the Avaya communication server, verify that the station has the following work mode features assigned to buttons. If these buttons are not assigned to the station, Avaya IP Agent cannot enable the work modes on Agent toolbar: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Auto-in or Manual-in – After Call Work (ACW) (optional) – Auxiliary Work (AUX). ● On the Avaya communication server, verify that the first AUX work mode button assigned to the station has a blank reason code or a reason code of 0.
<p>The agent logs in but is immediately logged out.</p>	<p>If the station or agent is administered as <i>auto-answer</i> on the Avaya communication server, you must activate Enable support for auto-answer in the Program Options for Avaya IP Agent. After changing this setting in Avaya IP Agent, you must restart Avaya IP Agent for the change to take effect.</p>

Problem	What to do
Agents are logged off repeatedly from EAS or the Avaya communication server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that the network is not having stability problems or failures in service. ● On the Avaya communication server, ensure that the Auto-In field for the agent is set to <code>station</code> and not <code>aux</code>. Also, ensure that the Enable automatic login option in the Program Options dialog for Avaya IP Agent is activated. ● If you are using Avaya Callmaster VI stations or emulation, a PASTE code is required on the Avaya communication server.
Agent is unable to log into the ACD in shared control mode.	On voice terminals which support a headset button, ensure that the headset button is selected prior to attempting an ACD login.

Voice-over-IP

This section lists those problems that are associated with Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations.

Problem	What to do
Agent cannot be heard by other party.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that a defective sound device or microphone is not being used. ● Ensure that the sound device is configured properly through Windows. ● Ensure that excessive background or personal computer noises are not preventing voice transmission. ● Adjust the transmit gain level when using full-duplex mode in a noisy environment. ● Ensure that the microphone or headset is not muted.
Transmit and Receive lights on the status bar are red.	The selected bandwidth setting cannot be supported. To change bandwidth settings, log out of the ACD and the Avaya communication server, select Settings from the Login window, and select a lower bandwidth setting on the Audio tab.
There is excessive bandwidth usage when an agent is not actively on calls.	On the Avaya communication server, change the <code>Service Link Mode</code> : for this extension from <code>permanent</code> to <code>as-needed</code> .
Agents cannot establish calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that an improper codec is not in use. ● Ensure that the network can support the bandwidth required for Voice-over-IP.

Problem	What to do
<p>The voice quality of the agent is poor when using Voice-over-IP (Road Warrior).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Check to see if the iClarity Status screen displays a high number of dropped packets and a low number of discarded packets. This indicates an inadequate sound device in the personal computer.● Check to see if the iClarity Status screen displays an equal number of dropped and discarded packets. This indicates problems with network bandwidth.● If the iClarity Status screen displays the correct information, run the Tuning Wizard again. The Tuning Wizard cannot be run while the transmit and receive channels are active. To deactivate the transmit and receive channels, you can either log the extension out of the Avaya communication server or change the extension settings from the Avaya communication server to use the as-needed option for the Service Link Mode field instead of permanent.● Ensure that your personal computer has enough system resources to handle VoIP communications in addition to the applications being used. See Voice-over-IP considerations on page 28.● If you are experiencing problems while using Internet Explorer, disable the Play Sounds feature of Internet Explorer.
<p>The voice quality of the other party is poor when using Voice-over-IP (Road Warrior).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Lower the gain setting on the microphone.● Set the Jitter Buffer in the Audio Options dialog box to Automatic.● Ensure that your personal computer has enough system resources to handle VoIP communications in addition to the applications being used. See Voice-over-IP considerations on page 28.● If you are experiencing problems while using Internet Explorer, disable the Play Sounds feature of Internet Explorer.

Problem	What to do
Agent hears his or her own voice (Road Warrior).	Lower the Transmit Gain in the Audio Options dialog box.
Caller hears his or her own voice (Road Warrior).	Lower the Receive Gain in the Audio Options dialog box.
Receiving and transmitting audio is delayed using the Road Warrior configuration.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that your Avaya communication server is optimized to handle “shuffling” and “hairpinning” for Voice-over-IP. Consult your Avaya communication server documentation for more information. ● Lower the Jitter Buffer in the Audio Options dialog box. ● If you are using the Windows Quality of Service (QoS) feature in conjunction with a firewall, the range of ports for QoS set up on the Avaya communication server must overlap the range of firewall ports specified in Avaya IP Agent by 100 ports. If these ranges do not overlap by 100 ports, QoS is not used by iClarity IP Audio, and transmissions are done within the range of firewall ports. ● Ensure that your personal computer has enough system resources to handle VoIP communications in addition to the applications being used. See Voice-over-IP considerations on page 28 ● If you are experiencing problems while using Internet Explorer, disable the Play Sounds feature of Internet Explorer.

Problem	What to do
<p>There is echo and poor voice quality while using Voice-over-IP (Road Warrior).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● If you are using speakers and a microphone instead of a headset, change to half-duplex in the Audio Options dialog box. Using separate speakers and a microphone can cause feedback.● Ensure that your personal computer has enough system resources to handle VoIP communications in addition to the applications being used. See Voice-over-IP considerations on page 28● If you are experiencing problems while using Internet Explorer, disable the Play Sounds feature of Internet Explorer.
<p>You do not know how to stop the transmit and receive audio traffic.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● If the Service Link Mode for this station is set to permanent on the Avaya communication server, the transmission and receiving of audio over the network is inactive only when the agent first logs in. The first call that occurs for this extension will cause the audio traffic to begin and remain active until the extension is logged off of the Avaya communication server.● If the Service Link Mode for this station is set to as-needed, the audio link will become inactive 10 seconds after the release of a call.
<p>The Audio Tuning Wizard does not run when you attempt to start it.</p>	<p>The Audio Tuning Wizard cannot be run while the audio transmit and receive channels are active. If you are on an active call, wait until the call has been completed, log out of Avaya IP Agent, and log out of the Avaya communication server. You must then re-register your extension with the Avaya communication server, run the Audio Tuning Wizard, and then log in as an agent through Avaya IP Agent.</p>

Making and receiving calls

This section lists problems that are associated with placing outgoing calls and receiving incoming ACD calls through Avaya IP Agent.

Problem	What to do
Agents cannot place calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that the agent is logged in. ● Check the Windows Dialing Properties to rule out improper number formatting. Dialing rules must conform to the dialing rules of the country in which the Avaya communication server resides. ● Ensure that calling cards are not being used.
In Telecommuter mode, picking up the handset does not automatically answer the incoming call displayed in the Avaya IP Agent window.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that the <code>Service Link Mode</code> for the station is set to <code>as-needed</code>. ● Ensure that the Enable support for auto-answer option is disabled. This option is found in the Program Options in Avaya IP Agent. If this option is enabled, disable it and then reboot your personal computer. ● The auto-answer feature must be configured in Avaya IP Agent and for the station definition on the Avaya communication server.
Attempts to conference two existing call appearances results in a Call could not be conferenced error.	This problem can occur if the event logging feature is enabled, a virus scan program is set to analyze all accessed files, and the personal computer has a processor that is slower than 1GHz. To remedy this situation, turn off the event logging feature.

Problem	What to do
<p>In the Telecommuter or IP Telephone configurations, the Avaya IP Agent main window does not display that a call is incoming until the second or third ring.</p> <p>The main window is very slow in displaying the Call Information Panel for an incoming call.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The processor of the personal computer is being used too heavily. To resolve this problem, close one or more applications to decrease the load on the processor. ● A virus scanning program is monitoring and validating the activity of the executable files for Avaya IP Agent and any log files. To resolve this problem, configure the virus scanning application to not scan the directory where Avaya IP Agent was installed. By default, this location is as follows: C:\Program Files\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent Alternatively, you can configure your virus scan program to scan instances only where program files are written to instead of all file types. This will decrease the necessity of your virus program to scan the log files that are modified in Avaya IP Agent when a call is received. ● Ensure that there is enough network bandwidth for Avaya IP Agent to receive the data channel information in a timely manner.
<p>The call appearance remains active after an agent takes a call and the calling party hangs up.</p>	<p>Set Service Link Mode to "AS-NEEDED" rather than "PERMANENT."</p>
<p>The No-Hold-Conference feature button is not fully functional with IP Agent Road Warrior, Telecommuter, and Shared Control (via server or IP phone) configurations whether the system parameters SLA and NDT are enabled or not.</p> <p>The No-Hold-Conference feature button works properly when dialing the next party with DialPad or Send TouchTone, but not with Dial Number. When use Dial Number to add the next party</p>	<p>When you use Dial Number to add the next party, you will get two call appearances instead of 3-way conference. You must then make an extra click of the Conference button to complete the 3-way conference.</p>

Other

This section lists general problems that one might encounter with Avaya IP Agent.

Problem	What to do
Collected digit information is not displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You must have a callr-info button assigned for non-Callmaster telephones so that collected digit information is displayed. Buttons are configured for extensions through the <code>change station</code> command on the Avaya communication server. ● Ensure that VuStats is deactivated. This can be done by double-clicking on the Normal Mode button in the Phone Features window.
User-to-User-Information (UUI) is not being displayed.	On the Avaya communication server, ensure that the UUI IE Treatment field in the Trunk-Group definition form is set to service-provider .
User-to-User-Information (UUI) is not being transmitted between agents for transfers or conferences	Ensure that Communication Manager has the appropriate features enabled.
The Call Information Panel (CIP) is not displaying any data.	This problem can occur if you are emulating a phone type that is normally configured to display 40 characters of information and it is currently in use because of VuStats, Q-call, or if it is already busy with information from another incoming call. You can either change the phone type emulation to one that displays 80 characters of information or disable VuStats so that the call information panel is not committed to displaying this information. See Compatible telephone types for Avaya IP Agent on page 24 for telephones that support 80 character displays.
In Telecommuter mode, touch-tones are not sent when the agent presses the buttons of the number pad on the telephone.	This situation occurs because the data portion of the Telecommuter configuration is sent through Avaya IP Agent on the personal computer and not the telephone. Use the Dial Pad or the personal computer keyboard to enter numbers where Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) signals are needed.

Problem	What to do
Avaya IP Agent is reacting slowly.	The Event Logging feature of Avaya IP Agent can inhibit product performance. If you are not working with Avaya support personnel to solve a problem with Avaya IP Agent, this feature should be disabled. However, if you must run event logging, you should ensure that any anti-virus program is not scanning every file when changes are made. Your anti-virus software should be scanning default file extensions, such as .exe and .com.
The settings for one Avaya IP Agent installation were exported, but the import did not seem to work on another workstation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ensure that you are not trying to use exported settings from an Avaya IP Agent installation on another operating system. Setting exports from an operating system, such as Microsoft Windows 2000, cannot be imported on a different operating system, such as Microsoft Windows XP. Also, if one Avaya IP Agent installation is configured for Avaya Callmaster VI, those settings cannot be imported to an Avaya IP Agent installation with an IP Endpoint configuration. ● If you are renaming items from the Phone Features or Personal Phone Features windows, you must use the Rename (All Extensions) option. Otherwise, the name change only occurs for the specific extension number.
The button feature assignments were changed for this extension, but the assignments either are not displayed in Avaya IP Agent or they fail to work.	<p>Do the first item in the following list. If the first item does not correct the problem, use the subsequent items that are appropriate for your configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select Tools > Phone Features from the main window and then select Rebuild All from the menu bar on the Phone Features window. ● Refresh the phone features for your Avaya Callmaster VI by selecting Settings > Phone Configuration from the menu bar. ● For IP Endpoint configurations, exit and restart Avaya IP Agent.

Problem	What to do
<p>Phone Feature buttons do not work or are performing a different function.</p>	<p>If you are logging in as a different extension than the one that was just used with Avaya IP Agent, you must reboot the personal computer and log in again to regain these functions.</p> <p><i>or</i></p> <p>During station administration, if you delete a Phone Feature button from the Feature Buttons toolbar, the entire Feature Button toolbar will be deleted.</p> <p>Choose Tools > Phone Features and select File > Rebuild All to refresh phone features and rebuild the Feature button toolbar, Phone feature toolbar, and Personal Phone Features.</p>
<p>The agent was in Auto-In mode, received a call, and selected the After Call Work mode. When the call was finished, the work mode changed back to Auto-In.</p>	<p>If the agent needs to use the After Call Work mode consistently, use the Manual-In work mode instead of the Auto-In work mode.</p>
<p>The agent is unable to record greetings.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● For Avaya Callmaster VI configurations, check to see if the headset button in the Agent Greetings window is activated. If so, click on the button to deactivate it and try to record the greeting again. The headset can also be deactivated through the headset button on the Avaya Callmaster VI unit. ● For Road Warrior (VoIP) configurations, the recording of agent greetings can be done only when the transmit and receive audio connections are inactive. You can log off and restart Avaya IP Agent to record agent greetings, but the first call instance that occurs will once again disable the ability to record agent greetings. ● For Telecommuter (without Avaya Switcher II), IP Telephone, and Avaya Telephone configurations, agent greetings are not supported.

Problem	What to do
The folders in the Phone Features window are not in the appropriate language.	This problem occurs when multiple languages are installed for Avaya IP Agent. When first opened, the Phone Features window displays the names of the folders in the language version of Avaya IP Agent that is currently running. However, if you change to a different language version, the folders in this window retain the language used when the window was first opened. To reset the folders to the current language, select File > Rebuild All from the menu bar on the Phone Features window. This action will reset all folders and features. Any customization you may have made to feature names will be lost.
How to remove the call timer	The call timer can be removed from Call Information Panels by editing the following entry in the Registry: [HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\Avaya\Avaya IP Agent\Config\Settings] "HideCallTimer"=dword:00000001
Fatal errors are occurring when the Call History window is opened.	This could be a sign that the Avaya IP Agent database is corrupt. To resolve this problem, uninstall and reinstall Avaya IP Agent. Any data stored in the database previous to this action is lost.
When Play greetings using Avaya Switcher II is enabled in the Audio Tuning Wizard, the Agent Greetings item does not appear in the Tools menu.	After you have enabled this feature, you must restart Avaya IP Agent for the Agent Greetings menu item to be displayed.
Avaya IP Agent stops responding when the USB headset is removed.	Avaya IP Agent cannot dynamically adjust to hardware changes in the sound system of your personal computer. You must not remove any sound devices from your personal computer while Avaya IP Agent is running. To close this instance of Avaya IP Agent, use the Windows Task Manager.

Alternative solution possibilities

If the information in this section did not solve your problem, it is possible that areas other than Avaya IP Agent are at fault. You can investigate the following areas for solutions:

Appendix C: Troubleshooting

- Firewall configurations
- Network configurations and available bandwidth
- Speed and available resources of the personal computer being used with Avaya IP Agent
- Problems with the Central Office (your telephone service provider)
- Network failures (WAN/LAN)
- Problems occurring in the other party's telephone system
- VPN software problems (timeouts, configuration)
- Avaya communication server configuration problems

Appendix D: IP Agent Bluetooth Integrator

The Avaya IP Agent Road Warrior configuration offers the optional use of a Bluetooth adapter and headset to allow you to answer, mute and release calls. The Bluetooth headset is capable of operation up to 30 feet away from the PC where the Bluetooth adapter is installed.

The Bluetooth hardware and software are not included with IP Agent R7. You must acquire them separately.

Note:

IP Agent R7 will only work with Bluetooth headsets on Windows XP Professional systems.

This appendix contains the following sections:

- [Before you begin](#) on page 285
- [Installing the Bluetooth Utility](#) on page 286
- [Configuring the Bluetooth Integrator](#) on page 287
- [Pairing the Bluetooth headset](#) on page 287
- [Connecting to the Avaya Bluetooth Integrator](#) on page 288
- [Configuring IP Agent](#) on page 288
- [Logging in to IP Agent](#) on page 289

Before you begin

Avaya has tested and verified the operation of the following Bluetooth hardware and software with IP Agent R7:

- Plantronics 510 Voyager headset.
- D-Link DBT-120 Bluetooth adapter Revision C.

You should use the documentation that accompanies the hardware and software to familiarize yourself with their operation. See <http://www.support.dlink.com/products/revision.asp?productId=DBT-120> for more information.

Note:

The use of any other Bluetooth hardware or software is unsupported by Avaya and is done at your own risk.

This appendix includes general instructions for installing and configuring the Bluetooth devices to work with IP Agent R7. Your specific installation may require some configuration steps not defined here.

Installing the Bluetooth Utility

To install the Bluetooth Utility:

1. Insert the D-Link Bluetooth 2.0 USB Adapter CD-ROM into your CD drive.
The USB Bluetooth Adapter installation screen appears.
2. Click **Install Driver**.
The Bluetooth Setup Settings Setup Program screen appears.
3. Click **Install the Bluetooth Utility**.
The Bluetooth **Stack for Windows Installation Wizard** screen appears.
4. Click **Next**.
The License Agreement screen appears.
5. Select **I accept the terms in the license agreement** and click **Next**.
The **Ready to Install the Program** screen appears.
6. Click **Install**.
The Bluetooth Stack for Windows Setup screen appears.
7. Select **I accept** and Click **OK**.
A dialog appears asking for the plug the Bluetooth adapter into an available USB port.
8. Click **OK**.
The **Install complete** screen appears.
9. Click **Finish**.
A dialog appears instructing you to reboot your system.
10. Reboot the system.

Configuring the Bluetooth Integrator

The IP Agent R7 Bluetooth Integrator is installed by default during the IP Agent R7 installation process. If this item was deselected during the initial installation process for some reason, you can add the Bluetooth Integrator by following the process described in [Changing or removing Avaya IP Agent](#) on page 84.

To configure the Bluetooth Integrator:

1. Start the Bluetooth Integrator:
Start > Programs > Avaya > Avaya IP Agent > Avaya Bluetooth Integrator
2. Select **Start automatically at Avaya IP Agent station login**.
3. Click **Close**.

Pairing the Bluetooth headset

To pair the Bluetooth headset with the Bluetooth Adapter:

1. Open the Bluetooth Utility by either:
 - Double click the Bluetooth icon in the Icon Tray
 - **Start > Programs > Bluetooth > Bluetooth Settings**The Add New Connection Wizard appears.
2. Select **Express Mode**.
3. Put the headset into broadcast mode by holding both the "Answer" and "+" buttons until the red and blue lights flash alternately.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select **PLT 510**.
6. Click **Refresh**.
The Bluetooth Utility will discover your headset.
7. Click **Next**.
The Bluetooth Security screen appears.
8. Enter the security code: 0000
9. Click **Next**.
A tone will sound in the headset.
10. Press the headset "Answer" button.

11. Double click the **PLT 150** icon in the Bluetooth Settings screen.
A tone sounds in the headset.
12. Press the headset "Answer" button.
The PLT 150 icon shows the "connected" symbol.
13. Exit the Bluetooth Settings window.

Connecting to the Avaya Bluetooth Integrator

To connect the headset to the Avaya Bluetooth Integrator:

1. Restart the Avaya Bluetooth Integrator.
2. Click Connect.
A tone sounds in the headset.
3. Push the headset "Answer" button.

Configuring IP Agent

The first time you use IP Agent after connecting your Bluetooth adapter and headset, you must configure IP Agent to recognize the new hardware.

To configure IP Agent:

1. Start IP Agent.
2. Cancel the **Login** dialog.
3. From the **Audio** menu item select **Tuning Wizard**.
The Audio Tuning Wizard screen appears.
4. Verify that the Bluetooth device is selected for both fields.
5. Click **Next**.
The playback device test screen appears.
6. Test the playback device as described on this screen.
7. Click **Next**.
The microphone test screen appears.
8. Test the microphone as described on this screen.

9. Click **Next**.
The background sound test screen appears.
Test the background sound as described on this screen.
10. Click **Next**.
11. Click **Finish**.

Logging in to IP Agent

To login in to IP Agent:

1. From the **File** menu item select **Station Login...**
2. Select the **Road Warrior** configuration.
3. Click **Log in**.

Glossary

Abbreviated Dial Feature	Allows the agent to store telephone numbers, that the agent selects, for quicker and easier dialing by selecting a single button. Each number can be a complete or partial telephone number, an extension number, or a trunk or feature code.
ACD	See Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) .
Active Call	A call appearance state where the voice (talk) path between two parties has been connected.
ACW	See After Call Work (ACW) .
Add/Remove Programs	A Microsoft Windows feature that allows you to remove programs that have been installed on your computer. The Add/Remove Programs component is found in the Control Panel.
After Call Work (ACW)	An ACD agent work mode in which agents are performing tasks related to a previously completed call. In this mode, the agents are unavailable to receive ACD calls.
Agent	A person who receives calls that are delivered from a split or skill.
Agent greetings	Recorded messages played by Avaya IP Agent when a call is received by an agent. This feature is used to eliminate the need for an agent to repeat the same statement for every call.
Agent Mode	<p>An agent logs into an Avaya communication server with a specific agent ID, which is associated with certain assigned skills and configuration settings. Do not confuse this with registering as an extension with the Avaya communication server as an agent must first register as an extension before logging in with an agent ID.</p> <p>Logging in as an agent enables the Agent toolbar in the main window.</p>
Agent Skill	A centrally-defined attribute that is associated with an EAS ACD agent ID, which represents a certain ability or assignment for that agent. An agent can be assigned up to 20 skills. The meaning of each Agent Skill is customizable. Examples of what could be considered skills are: the ability to speak a particular language or the expertise to handle a certain product.
Agent work mode	A feature of agent call handling. Agent work modes are the different call work modes and call states an agent can be in (logins, logouts, After Call Work, AUX, and so forth). Data about these states is displayed in the history log.
Agent toolbar	A toolbar that provides buttons for agent login and logout and agent modes, such as Auto-In, Manual-In, and After Call Work.

Alternate Gatekeeper

Alternate Gatekeeper	A feature of Avaya communication servers that notifies IP endpoints of all IP addresses for a network region. If communication fails with an IP address on the Avaya communication server, Avaya IP Agent attempts to reconnect with another IP address within the same network region.
Alternate User Interface	Avaya IP Agent interfaces that use much less space on the Desktop than the main window.
Assist	Allows an agent to request assistance (whether on an active ACD call or not) from the split or skill supervisor by pressing the Assist button or by putting the call on hold and dialing the Assist feature access code, followed by the split group number. The agent must be logged into the split or skill.
Auto-answer	An Avaya communication server feature where calls directed to an agent are connected without any action required on the part of the agent. An agent can begin conversing with the other party without having to accept the call by activating a call appearance or releasing the switch hook.
Autodial	A telephone feature where a single button is used to dial a complete telephone number.
Auto-In	An ACD work mode. In the Auto-In mode, when an agent disconnects from a call, that agent is automatically available to receive another ACD call.
Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)	A method of call distribution where EAS agents are placed in groups called <i>skills</i> . An EAS agent can be logged into up to 20 skills simultaneously. EAS distributes calls to the extension of an agent that possesses the necessary skill.
Automatic Number Identification (ANI)	A service that provides the telephone number of an incoming call.
AutoPlay	A Microsoft Windows feature that causes an application on a CD-ROM to run without any user interaction as soon as the CD-ROM is inserted into the drive.
AUX	See Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode .
AUX RC	See Auxiliary Reason Code (AUX RC) .
Auxiliary Reason Code (AUX RC)	A numeric code that describes the reason for entering the AUX work mode, such as lunch or meetings. This Expert Agent Selection (EAS) feature enables a contact center to track the time of an agent more precisely.
Auxiliary Work (AUX) mode	An ACD agent work mode indicating that the agent is unavailable (for example, observing a pre-defined period of inactivity or in training) to receive an ACD call.
Available	An agent state in which the agent is able to accept an ACD call. This is a sub-state of the Auto-In and Manual-In modes.
Avaya communication server	A DEFINITY, MultiVantage, or Communication Manager system. These systems receive and distribute communications throughout a contact center.
Avaya IP Softphone	Avaya IP Softphone is an Avaya product that enables you to log in to an Avaya communication server as an extension. Avaya IP Softphone does not support agent login and cannot co-reside with Avaya IP Agent.

Avaya Switcher II	<p>A type of headset unit that provides connections to a telephone and to the soundcard of a personal computer. This headset allows you to record and play agent greetings in the Telecommuter mode for personal computer-based installations of Avaya IP Agent. (Not available in Windows Vista.) For information about using an Avaya Switcher II, see:</p> <p>http://www.plantronics.com/media/media_resources/literature/user_guides/MX10_en.pdf</p>
Avaya Telephone (DCP/IP)	<p>An Avaya IP Agent configuration where calls are conducted through a Digital Communication Protocol (DCP) or Internet Protocol (IP) telephone. Avaya IP Agent does not take over, but shares control with the telephone. Any action can be done through either the physical telephone or through Avaya IP Agent. This configuration does not require the creation of a second extension for use with Avaya IP Agent.</p>
Bandwidth	<p>The maximum number of digital bits that can pass through a communications channel every second. For example, Ethernet 10BaseT has a maximum bandwidth of 10 megabits per second.</p>
Basic Conference	<p>A mode of joining multiple parties to the same call. Up to five parties can be added, for a total of six on a call. The agent selects Conference, dials the number through the keyboard, talks to the party, and selects Conference again. See also Enhanced Conference.</p>
Basic Transfer	<p>A transfer mode that sends the current call to another telephone number or extension. The agent remains on the line until the call is answered and can announce the call. See also Enhanced Transfer and Unsupervised Transfer.</p>
Bluetooth	<p>Bluetooth technology provides provides the ability to answer, mute and release calls via a wireless headset when operating in Road Warrior (VoIP) mode.</p>
Call appearance	<p>A call connected to an extension. Most telephone types can support multiple call appearances simultaneously. Each call appearance is represented with a Call Information Panel in the main window.</p>
Call Information Panel (CIP)	<p>A single panel (40-character display) that displays information about a single call, such as caller name, call duration, status icon, and control buttons, such as Answer/Release and Reconnect.</p>
Call Prompting	<p>An Avaya communication server feature that routes incoming calls based on information entered by the calling party, such as an account number. The caller is prompted to select options from those listed in an announcement. See Prompted digits for related information.</p>
Callmaster VI	<p>A special telephone produced by Avaya. This telephone connects to a personal computer through a serial cable. This telephone and telephone type (606A1) are fully supported by Avaya IP Agent.</p>
Call Work Code	<p>A numeric sequence, up to 16 digits, entered by an agent that identifies the type of call received by the agent. These codes are user-defined and administered on the Avaya communication server.</p>
CIP	<p>See Call Information Panel (CIP).</p>

Circuit pack

Circuit pack	Expansion modules that can be used to expand a DEFINITY, MultiVantage, or Communication Manager server. For Avaya IP Agent, the required circuit packs are related to IP communications.
Comma-separated values	Fields and records in a text file that are delimited by commas. This is a simple form of a database.
Communication Manager	The software used in Avaya communication servers. Communication Manager systems succeed and surpass DEFINITY and MultiVantage systems.
Communication server	A general term for Avaya DEFINITY, MultiVantage, and Communication Manager systems.
Conference	See Basic Conference or Enhanced Conference .
Connected	A trunk state in which a caller and an agent are able to converse on an ACD call.
Contact center	A location where communications are received and placed. These communications can be telephone calls, e-mail, Web-based instant messaging, and others.
DDE	See Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) .
DEFINITY ECS	DEFINITY Enterprise Communications Server (ECS). The DEFINITY ECS is a telecommunications system that routes voice and data information between various endpoints, such as telephones, terminals, and computers. It provides highly robust networking capabilities and includes an extensive set of standard features, such as Attendant Consoles, Voice Processing Interface, Call Coverage, DS1/E1 Connectivity, Hospitality Support, Recorded Announcement, and Trunk-to-Trunk Transfer. It also allows for the addition of optional features and upgrades to the system as business needs change.
Delimited text file	A file containing fields, records, and values that are separated by commas, tabs, semicolons, or other characters.
Dial Pad	An Avaya IP Agent dialog box that displays the 12 characters available on a telephone.
Dial Number button	A button on the Dial Number toolbar that an agent uses to go off-hook and initiate a dial tone or to dial the digits previously entered in the Number text box.
Dial Number toolbar	A toolbar that provides a number text box, access to the Contact Directory, Contact History, Speed Dial, and Recent Calls list. When an agent enters a string (for example, lan) followed by Enter, a popup menu displays with a list of the directory entries that start with that string. If the first character of the number is a letter, the title of the field will be changed from Number to Name.
Dial Plan	The configuration of an Avaya communication server that determines how extensions, external telephone numbers, and server features are contacted or activated. For example, a dial plan might determine that all internal extensions can be reached by dialing a five-digit number. Dial plans are configured through an Avaya communication server.

Digital Communications Protocol (DCP)	A communication protocol used to transmit voice and data between Avaya telephone sets and an Avaya communication server.
DNS	See Domain Naming System (DNS) .
Domain	<p>For Windows networking, a domain is a subnetwork comprised of a group of clients and servers under common control.</p> <p>For the Internet, a domain is the highest subdivision of a domain name. For example, .com, .org, and .net are domains.</p>
Domain Naming System (DNS)	An Internet mechanism where Uniform Resource Locator (URL) addresses are translated to Internet Protocol (IP) addresses. For example, <code>www.avaya.com</code> translates to a series of numbers that use the format <code>123.123.123.123</code> . DNS servers can exist inside private networks that are separated from the Internet.
Drop	An agent uses this feature to disconnect from a call and place another call or to disconnect the last person added to a conference call.
Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)	A form of communication between Windows applications that allows the exchange of data, information, and commands.
EAS	See Expert Agent Selection (EAS) .
Emergency Call Handling (ECH)	An Avaya communication server feature that determines the location of IP endpoints that place a call to emergency services, such as 911 in the United States.
Enhanced Conference	A feature that allows you to add up to six telephone numbers to a call. See also Basic Conference .
Enhanced Transfer	A transfer option that sends the present call to another phone number or extension. See also Basic Transfer and Unsupervised Transfer .
Expert Agent Selection (EAS)	An optional Avaya communication server feature that builds on the power of the Call Vectoring and ACD features to send a particular call to an agent who has at least one of the skills that the caller requires.
FAC	See Feature Access Code (FAC) .
Feature Access Code (FAC)	A 1-to-4 digit number with an optional leading * or # that is assigned during Avaya communication server administration to invoke features. For example, *81 may invoke Service Observing Listen Only. FACs require an available call appearance with dial tone before the FAC can be sent to the Avaya communication server. Assigned FACs may not be available to all users on an Avaya communication server based on class of restrictions and whether the feature has been enabled in the Avaya communication server.
Feature button	A button that can be assigned to any one of a number of Avaya communication server features. Feature buttons are assigned to an extension during station administration on the Avaya communication system.
Firewall	Hardware, software, or a combination of the two that provide a boundary between two or more networks. Firewalls can be implemented on different devices with differing levels of security and access.

Graphical User Interface (GUI)

Graphical User Interface (GUI)	An environment where icons, dialog boxes, windows, buttons, fields, and other controls are presented through the use of program functions supplied by the operating system. You can interact with the interface with a pointing device, such as a mouse, and, usually, the keyboard.
GUI	See Graphical User Interface (GUI) .
H.323	A specification that defines packet standards for multimedia communications over IP networks that interact with telephony networks.
Hold	A feature that allows an agent to leave a telephone call without disconnecting it. You can return to the call at any time.
HTML	See HyperText Markup Language (HTML) .
Hypertext	A word or series of words in a software application that can be used to access information through user interaction.
HyperText Markup Language (HTML)	A structured language used in the authoring and presentation of information. See also Hypertext .
iClarity IP Audio	An Avaya component that provides station registration and voice/data signalling with an Avaya communication server.
Installation folder	The directory on the personal computer that contains the Avaya IP Agent files.
Instant Messaging	An application that allows users to exchange brief messages to one another in real time.
Internet Protocol address (IP address)	A unique, 32-bit (4-byte) number that identifies a computer on a TCP/IP network and is used in the transmission and delivery of data packets. An IP address is represented in four, 8-bit (1 byte) values, separated by periods. For example, 128.10.10.1. From left to right, each byte represents greater detail about the logical location within the network.
IP Address	See Internet Protocol address (IP address) .
IP Endpoint	A telephone extension that uses IP for data signaling, voice communication, or both. Extensions that use the Road Warrior, Telecommuter, IP Telephone, or Avaya Telephone configuration are considered IP Endpoints.
IP Telephone	A telephone set that uses an Ethernet connection to relay voice communication. This is also the name for the configuration by which control of the telephone is shared by Avaya IP Agent.
Jitter Buffer	A data area where Voice-over-IP packets are collected and assembled for the purpose of playing through an audio device. Because IP packets vary in receipt time, the jitter buffer assists in making audio quality consistent to the listener.
LAN	See Local Area Network (LAN) .
LDAP	See Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) .
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)	A network protocol used over TCP/IP networks for querying and retrieving information from a hierarchical directory.

Local Area Network (LAN)	A private, interactive communication network through which computers can communicate over short distances at high data transfer rates.
Log	A record of activity.
Login	The process of identifying a user with a computer, device, or server so that the user can use resources or features. In regards to Avaya IP Agent, an agent must log in to the Avaya communication server to receive ACD calls.
Login ID	A number and that allows an EAS agent to log in to the Avaya communication server. Skills and other information are assigned to the login ID of the agent.
Logout	The act of a user that notifies a computer, device, or server that no further tasks will be performed by this user at this time and that no resources should be allocated for this specific user.
Manual-In	An ACD work mode. In the Manual-In mode, the agent automatically enters the ACW mode when the agent disconnects from an ACD call. To become available to receive another ACD call, the agent must manually select the Auto-In or Manual-In mode.
Media Encryption	Communications between Avaya iClarity IP Audio and the Avaya communication server are encoded so that the information cannot be deciphered by unauthorized recipients.
Microsoft Installer technology	<p>Microsoft Installer technology (MSI) is designed to reduce the total cost of ownership (TCO) of deploying the Avaya IP Agent application by increasing the customers' ability to manage and maintain application components during setup and runtime.</p> <p>The MSI installation database tracks which feature require one or more components, which files comprise each component, where each file is installed on the system, and where component sources are located.</p>
MSI	See Microsoft Installer technology .
MultiVantage	A line of next-generation communication servers offered by Avaya. MultiVantage systems succeed and surpass DEFINITY systems.
Network	A group of devices that are connected in such a way that data or communications can be transmitted and received between the devices.
Off-Hook	The voice path to your telephone is active.
On-Hook	The voice path to your telephone is inactive.
PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE)	A feature of an Avaya communication server where data for a call is passed to a Callmaster VI telephone set, which can then send the data through a serial connection to a program, on the personal computer, that can interpret the data.
Phone display	A 40-character display that is located in the status bar of the Avaya IP Agent main window. This display area receives information from the Avaya communication server so that you can see call and non-call related information, such as call prompted digits and VuStats.
Prompted digits	One or more numbers entered by a caller that indicate responses to automated questions posed when the call first enters the contact center.

PSTN

PSTN

See [Public Switched Telephone Network \(PSTN\)](#).

Public Directory

A database that can be accessed through the [Lightweight Directory Access Protocol \(LDAP\)](#) protocol. A Public Directory usually contains information on people or personnel within some unit of organization, such as a business, educational facility, and so forth.

Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)

The worldwide voice telephone network.

Quality of Service (QoS)

A technology used to prioritize real-time communications over data transmissions. Real-time communications can include of multimedia, Voice-over-IP, video, and others. Some operating systems, network devices, and network software support QoS.

RC

See [Reason Code \(RC\)](#).

Read-only

A folder or file that can be read, but not modified, updated, or deleted.

Reason Code (RC)

A numeric code that describes the reason that an agent enters the AUX work mode or logs out of the system.

Registry

The system-wide repository of information supported and used by Windows.

Release

Disconnects the current call.

Response file

See [Silent install](#).

Right-To-Use (RTU)

A licensing mechanism used in Avaya communication servers. In some situations, multiple RTUs can be used by a single extension so that data and voice signaling are supported.

Road Warrior

An Avaya IP Agent configuration where calls are conducted through a personal computer with a sound device and a network connection by using Voice-over-IP (VoIP). No telephone set is required for this configuration.

Screen Pop

The automatic display of information on the screen of the personal computer from other sources, such as databases or Web pages. Screen Pops are activated by triggering criteria.

Silent install

A method of installing software where no graphical user interfaces are presented and no user interaction is required.

Skill

An attribute that is assigned to an ACD Agent. Agent Skills can be thought of as the ability for an Agent with a particular set of skills to handle a call that requires one of those skills.

Softphone

A software application that enables you to control telephone calls, both incoming and outgoing, directly from your computer, where communication is done through Voice-over-IP.

Split

A group of extensions that receives special-purpose calls in an efficient, cost-effective manner. Normally, calls to a split arrive primarily over one or a few trunk groups.

Station Login	The process of registering as an extension of an Avaya communication server. With Avaya IP Agent, a station login must be completed before an agent login can occur.
Switch	A private call-handling system providing voice-only or voice and data communications services, including access to public and private networks, for a group of terminals within a premises. See also Communication server .
System Tray	The area of the Windows task bar where applications can display an icon for simplified access to special features. Avaya IP Agent displays an icon in the System Tray.
TAPI Assisted Dialing	Avaya IP Agent supports telephony-enabled applications, such as Microsoft Scheduler. This support provides the ability for telephony-enabled Windows applications to originate a call and have the call reflected in the Avaya IP Agent application.
Telecommuter	An Avaya IP Agent configuration where voice communications are performed through a telephone and data communications are sent through the network to a personal computer. In this configuration, calls to an extension can be routed to any telephone number.
Telephone type	Avaya produces many different models of telephone sets with differing capabilities. Each model supported by Avaya IP Agent is considered a telephone type. Telephone types are identified by the unique number associated with each model.
Toll quality	A term used to compare audio quality and reliability of voice communications to that of telephone calls placed over the PSTN.
Toolbar	A row of buttons used to activate various functions of Avaya IP Agent through the main window.
Tooltips	Brief descriptions that are displayed when the mouse pointer is over a toolbar button or control in the application interface.
Transfer	See Basic Transfer , Enhanced Transfer , or Unsupervised Transfer .
Unsupervised Transfer	A call transfer option that lets an agent send the present call to another phone number or extension. The agent does not talk to the party receiving the transferred call. See also Basic Transfer and Enhanced Transfer .
User-to-User Information (UUI)	A unique identifier that is added to an incoming call through an external application, such as Avaya ASAI.
VDN of Origin Announcement (VOA)	A short announcement that is assigned to a Vector Directory Number (VDN) through Avaya communication server administration. The VOA identifies the origin or purpose of a call for the call center agent who answers the call.
Vector	On a communication server, a list of steps that processes calls according to a configuration set by the administrator. The steps in a vector can send calls to splits or skills, play announcements and music, disconnect calls, give calls a busy signal, prompt callers for information, or route calls to other destinations.

Virtual Private Network (VPN)

Virtual Private Network (VPN)

A group of computers or network devices that can communicate privately and securely over a public IP network through the use of encryption and special protocols.

VOA

See [VDN of Origin Announcement \(VOA\)](#).

Voice-over-Internet Protocol (VoIP)

A technology where speech is converted to a digital signal and transmitted through Internet Protocol packets over the Internet or an intranet.

VuStats

An Avaya communication server feature that displays contact center activity and information on the display of a telephone set. For Avaya IP Agent, this information can be viewed in the status bar of the main window and the **VuStats Monitor** window.

Web Dialer

An Internet Explorer plug-in that highlights telephone numbers and allows a user to click on these numbers to automatically dial them through Avaya IP Agent. This plug-in also contains a toolbar that allows a user to enter and dial telephone numbers through Internet Explorer.

Windows Terminal Server / Windows Terminal Services

A Windows-based server that allows client terminals, personal computers, and other devices to use an environment and applications supplied by the server. Depending on the type of client, processing and storage can take place on the server or the client.

Zip Tone

A short dial tone that indicates that an ACD call is being connected to the agent.

Index

A

- abbreviated dialing [160](#)
- ACD Agent settings [226](#)
- ACW work mode [131](#)
- agent
 - login
 - non-EAS [125](#)
 - login (EAS) [123](#)
 - logout [126](#)
 - toolbar [217](#)
 - work mode, selecting [131](#)
- Agent Greetings
 - activating [173](#)
 - activation criteria [173](#)
 - ANI settings [254](#)
 - creating [172](#)
 - deleting [174](#)
 - description [253](#)
 - options [236](#)
 - overview [171](#)
 - Prompted Digits settings [256](#)
 - recording [172](#)
 - selective play by ANI [254](#)
 - selective play by prompted digits [256](#)
 - selective play by VDN [255](#)
 - settings [252](#)
 - title, changing [253](#)
 - toolbar [217](#)
 - VDN settings [255](#)
- Agent Information Panel [220](#)
- Agent menu item [211](#)
- alternate gatekeepers [106](#)
- alternate playback device [116](#)
- alternate user interfaces [127](#)
- answering a call [133](#)
- audio
 - Audio Control toolbar [218](#)
 - Audio menu item [213](#)
 - Audio Monitor dialog box [259](#)
 - Audio Options dialog box [257](#)
 - Audio Tuning Wizard [261](#)
 - requirements [66](#)
 - server ports [247](#)
 - settings, iClarity [244](#)
- audio settings, general [257](#)
- auto-answer feature [133](#)
- Auto-In [131](#)
- AUX work mode [131](#)
- Avaya communication server
 - alternate gatekeepers [106](#)
 - circuit packs, required [34](#)
 - configuring for Avaya Telephone-DCP [55](#)
 - configuring for Avaya Telephone-IP [48](#)
 - configuring for Callmaster VI [44](#)
 - configuring for IP Telephone [48](#)
 - configuring for Telecommuter and Road Warrior [37](#)
 - configuring, overview [33](#)
 - load balancing [107](#)
 - Primary Server Address [242](#)
 - registering with [120](#)
 - validating Feature Access Codes [35](#)
 - VuStats, configuration [177](#)
- Avaya IP Agent
 - Emergency Call Handling, configuring [102](#)
 - exiting [127](#)
 - features [15](#)
 - installing [67](#)
 - login to non-EAS [125](#)
 - logout of [126](#)
 - reinstalling [84](#)
 - removing [84](#)
 - running, overview [109](#)
 - starting [109](#)
 - uninstalling [84](#)
- Avaya Telephone configuration
 - definition [22](#)
- Avaya Telephone-DCP
 - configuring stations [58](#)
 - station settings, configuring [55](#)
- Avaya Telephone-IP
 - configuration stations [48](#)

B

- bandwidth setting for VoIP [257](#)
- Basic Transfer [139](#)
- buttons
 - Abbreviated Dial [160](#)
 - Agent state [217](#)
 - Conference [143](#), [216](#)
 - Contact Directory [216](#)
 - Contact History [216](#)
 - Dial Pad [216](#)
 - Drop [138](#), [216](#)
 - Hold [136](#), [216](#)

Index

Login	123
Logout	126
Release	137
Search Public Directory	216
Speed Dial	216
Transfer	216

C

call	
abbreviated dialing	160
answering	133
conferencing	
Basic Conference	143
Enhanced Conference	145
dropping	138
holding	136
recent call list.	148
releasing	137
Speed Dial list	157
transfer	
Basic Transfer.	139
Enhanced Transfer	141
overview	139
Unsupervised Transfer.	140
Call Handling options.	227
Call Information Display options.	229
Call Information Panel	220
Call menu item	208
Callmaster VI	
definition	22
ensuring Avaya communication server compatibility	44
initializing	119
station settings, configuring	46
toolbar	219
volume settings.	238
circuit packs	
descriptions	34
load balancing	107
required	34
Click-to-Dial	98
compatibility	
Callmaster VI.	44
Telecommuter and Road Warrior	37
conference	
Basic mode	143
Enhanced mode	145
configuration	
enhanced options.	87
Configuration Wizard.	110
configure	
Avaya communication server, overview	33
Avaya Telephone-DCP	58
Callmaster VI.	46
Feature Access Codes	35

IP Telephone	51
Road Warrior and Telecommuter	40
Contact Directory	149
Contact History options	228
CPU requirements	65

D

Database Options	231
Desktop Integration options	230
Dial Number toolbar	216
Dialog Reference	205
Drop button	138
Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)	
Screen Pops	191 , 197

E

Edit menu item	208
Emergency Call Handling	102
Avaya IP Agent, configuring	102
Emergency Call Handling (E911)	
settings	245
Enhanced Conference	145
Enhanced Transfer	141
Event Logging options	235
exiting Avaya IP Agent	127

F

Feature Access (security) options	239
Feature Access Codes	
validating on Avaya communication servers	35
feature buttons toolbar	218
features, Avaya IP Agent	15
File menu item	206
Firewall port settings	246
Full-duplex audio	257

G

gain (VoIP)	
transmit and receive	257
gatekeeper	
Avaya communication server.	106
load balancing	107
General Settings options	223
Glossary	291

H

Half-duplex audio.	257
hard disk requirements	65
Headset toolbar	219

Help menu item [215](#)
 holding a call [136](#)

I

iClarity
 audio settings [244](#)
 Emergency Call Handling (E911) settings [245](#)
 instant messaging settings [243](#)
 login tab [241](#)
 server address [242](#)
 VPN and Firewall [246](#)
iClarity settings [240](#)
 installation [67](#)
 PC-based [63](#)
 prerequisites (PC) [63](#)
 reinstalling [84](#)
 silent [79](#)
 upgrading V3, R4, R5 to R6 [83](#)
 VoIP considerations [28](#)
 Instant Messaging
 administration [97](#)
 Blocking users [163](#)
 Changing presence state [162](#)
 Emoticons [165](#)
 Font [165](#)
 overview [160](#)
 Responses [165](#)
 sending and receiving [162](#)
 starting a session [161](#)
 Timestamps [165](#)
 toolbar [219](#)
 Tracking presence states [164](#)
 instant messaging
 settings, iClarity [243](#)
 Instant Messaging menu item [214](#)
 IP Endpoints
 Audio Tuning Wizard [261](#)
 initializing [110](#)
 load balancing [107](#)
 IP Telephone
 configuring stations [48](#), [51](#)
 definition [21](#)

J

jitter buffer [257](#)

L

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)
 see Public Directory [181](#)
 load balancing on Avaya communication server [107](#)
 login

configuration [240](#)
 EAS [123](#)
 non-EAS [125](#)
 settings [241](#)
 troubleshooting [270](#)
 Login button [123](#)
 Login Settings [240](#)
 logout [126](#)
 of agent mode. [126](#)

M

main window
 Agent Information Panel [220](#)
 alternate interface [127](#)
 Call Information Panel [220](#)
 closing [127](#)
 descriptions [205](#)
 information panels [220](#)
 Phone Display Panel [220](#)
 Manual-In work mode [131](#)
 memory requirements [65](#)
 menu bar, main [205](#)
 menus, main window [205](#)
 microphone
 status [218](#)
 volume [218](#)

N

network requirements [66](#)

O

options
 audio [257](#)
 Avaya IP Agent [222](#)
 outgoing calls
 abbreviated dialing [160](#)
 Contact Directory [152](#)
 Public Directory [183](#)
 recent calls list [148](#)
 Speed Dial list [157](#)

P

Phone Buttons toolbar [216](#)
 Phone Display Panel [220](#)
 VuStats [178](#)
 Phone features toolbar [218](#)
 Phone Settings dialog box [238](#)
 port
 administration [247](#)
 problems, troubleshooting [269](#)

Index

processor requirements	65
Program Options	222
ACD Agent	226
Call Handling	227
Call Information Display	229
Contact History	228
Database Options	231
Desktop Integration	230
Event Logging	235
External Number Format	233
Feature Access	239
General Settings	223
Internal Dial Plan	234
Phone Settings	238
User Interface Options	232
Voice Message Number	237
Prompted Digits, settings for Agent Greetings	256
Public Directory	181
adding a service	181
adding contacts to Contact Directory	186
identifying multiple telephone number fields	188
searching	183
selecting fields	186
service, defining	181
service, deleting	189
using with Avaya IP Agent	181

Q

Quality of Service (QoS)	105
Quick-Dial	100

R

RAM requirements	65
recent calls list	148
registering	
with an Avaya communication server	120
Reinstalling	84
Release	
button	137
call	137
removing Avaya IP Agent	84
requirements	
audio	66
hard disk space	65
hardware	65
networking	66
PC-based, software	67
peripherals	67
processor	65
RAM, memory	65
Voice-over-IP considerations	28
ringer	
status	218

volume	218
Road Warrior (VoIP)	
Audio Tuning Wizard	261
configuring stations	40
definition	19
performance	28
required server circuit packs	34

S

Screen Pops	
activating	201
configuring	191
creating	
DDE	197
Windows application	192
deleting	203
modifying	202
search	
Public Directory	183
settings	
audio	257
bandwidth	257
gain, transmit and receive VoIP	257
jitter buffer	257
station, configuring Avaya Telephone-DCP	55, 58
station, configuring Avaya Telephone-IP	48
station, configuring for Callmaster VI	46
station, configuring IP Telephone	48, 51
station, configuring Road Warrior and Telecommuter40	40
Settings menu item	214
shortcut keys	263
agent features	264
Avaya IP Agent features	264
call features	263
Windows features	265
silent installation	79
software requirements	
PC-based installation	67
speakers	
status	218
volume	218
Speed Dial	157
Contact Directory	157
using	159
starting Avaya IP Agent	109
station	
configuring Avaya Telephone-DCP	55, 58
configuring Avaya Telephone-IP	48
configuring IP Telephone	48, 51
configuring Road Warrior and Telecommuter	40
configuring settings for Callmaster VI	46
supported telephone types	24
System Tray icon	221

T

Telecommuter	
configuring stations	40
definition	20
required server circuit packs	34
telephone types, supported	24
Toolbars	215
Agent	217
Agent Greetings	217
Audio Control	218
Callmaster	219
Dial Number	216
Feature buttons	218
Headset	219
Instant Messaging	219
moving	216
Phone Buttons	216
Phone features	218
Tools menu item	212
transfer	139
Basic Transfer	139
Enhanced Transfer	141
Unsupervised Transfer	140
troubleshooting	269
alternate causes	283
calls	278
login	270
other	280
registering with server	270
Voice-over-IP (VoIP)	274

U

uninstalling Avaya IP Agent	84
Unsupervised Transfer	140
update, automatic	224
upgrading	
V3,R4, R5 to R6	83
User Interface Options	232
user interfaces, alternate	127

V

VDN settings	
Agent Greetings	255
View menu item	209
Voice Message Number	237
Voice-over-IP (VoIP)	
Audio Monitor	259
Audio Tuning Wizard	261
considerations	28
troubleshooting	274
Volume and Ringer Settings	260

Volume and Ringer Settings	260
VPN	
configuring for	104
registering through	123
settings	246
VuStats	177
extension configuration	177
overview	177
refresh	179
time intervals	179
viewing data in main window	178

W

Web Dialer toolbar	167
work mode	
ACW	131
Auto-In and Manual-In	131
AUX	131
selecting	131

